

LE  
June 1937

# The CAVALRY JOURNAL

JULY-AUGUST  
1937



## SOME COMMENTS ON WAR

By Major General John L. Hines, Former Chief of Staff, United States Army

## A MOBILE RESERVE

(Extract from "Cavalry Combat")

# Book Suggestions

## HORSE SUBJECTS

A-HUNTING WE WILL GO, <i>Geoffrey Brooke</i> .....	\$ 3.00
AMERICAN METHODS OF HORSESHOEING, <i>Churchill</i> .....	1.50
AMERICAN POLO, <i>Bent</i> .....	6.00
AN ANALYSIS OF HORSEMANSHIP, <i>Lieutenant Colonel H. R. Smalley</i> .....	3.50
ANIMAL MANAGEMENT, <i>Cavalry School</i> .....	.95
THE ART OF RIDING, <i>Lt. Col. M. F. McTaggart</i> .....	3.50
AS TO POLO, <i>W. Cameron Forbes</i> .....	3.00
BREAKING AND RIDING, <i>James Fillis</i> .....	7.50
BRIDLEWISE, <i>Lt. Col. S. G. Goldschmidt</i> .....	5.00
CROSS SADDLE AND SIDE SADDLE, <i>Christy</i> .....	5.00
DEFENSE OF THE FORWARD SEAT, <i>Littauer and Kournakoff</i> .....	5.00
EXTERIOR OF THE HORSE, <i>Goubeaux and Barrier</i> .....	5.00
AN EYE FOR A HORSE, <i>Goldschmidt</i> .....	2.75
FEEDS AND FEEDING, <i>Henry and Morrison</i> .....	4.50
FELLOWSHIP OF THE HORSE, <i>Goldschmidt</i> .....	5.00
FIRST AIDS FOR HORSE OWNERS, <i>Lyon</i> .....	3.00
FROM COLONEL TO SUBALTERN (letters), <i>McTaggart</i> .....	5.00
FUNDAMENTALS OF HORSEMANSHIP, <i>Rademan</i> .....	3.50
THE GAITS—THE HORSEMAN (translated from the French), <i>Cavalry School</i> .....	.95
HANDBOOK FOR HORSE OWNERS, <i>McTaggart</i> .....	2.75
HINTS ON HORSEMANSHIP, <i>McTaggart</i> .....	2.50
THE HORSE AND HIS SCHOOLING, <i>McTaggart</i> .....	2.50
HORSE LOVERS, <i>Brooke</i> .....	3.50
HORSE SENSE FOR AMATEURS, <i>King</i> .....	1.50
HORSE SENSE AND HORSEMANSHIP, <i>Brooke</i> .....	5.00
HORSESHOEING, <i>Churchill</i> , 1933 .....	1.20
HORSE TRAINING, OUTDOOR AND HIGH SCHOOL, <i>Beudant</i> .....	3.00
IN MY OPINION, <i>Lyon</i> .....	7.50
AN INTRODUCTION TO POLO, <i>Mountbatten</i> .....	6.00
A MANUAL OF EQUITATION (translated from the French), <i>Cavalry School</i> .....	.95
MODERN HORSE MANAGEMENT, <i>Colonel R. S. Timmis, Royal Canadian Dragoons</i> .....	7.50
MODERN HORSE SERIES, <i>Timmis</i> .....	2.60
MODERN POLO, <i>Miller</i> .....	8.00
MOUNT AND MAN, <i>McTaggart</i> .....	5.00
POLO PONIES: THEIR TRAINING AND SCHOOLING, <i>Lt. Paul G. Kendall</i> .....	7.50
POLO PONY TRAINING, <i>Ramsay</i> .....	1.00
POSITION AND TEAM PLAY IN POLO, <i>Devereux</i> .....	1.50
PRACTICAL HORSEMANSHIP, <i>Major J. L. M. Barrett</i> .....	4.00
PRACTICAL JUMPING, <i>Barrett</i> .....	5.00
PRACTICAL LIGHT HORSE BREEDING, <i>Wall</i> .....	3.50
PRINCIPLES OF EQUITATION, <i>de Souza</i> .....	5.00
RIDING AND HUNTING, <i>Hayes</i> .....	8.75
RIDING REFLECTIONS (forward seat), <i>Santini</i> .....	10.00
RIDING AND SCHOOLING, <i>Timmis</i> .....	3.50
RIDING FORWARD, <i>Captain V. S. Littauer</i> .....	2.00
SADDLE UP, <i>Captain F. C. Hitchcock</i> .....	3.75
THE SADDLE HORSE, <i>Taylor</i> .....	3.50
SCHOOL FOR HORSE AND RIDER, <i>Hance</i> .....	3.75
SEATS, GAITS, REACTIONS (translated from the French), <i>Cavalry School</i> .....	.95
SELECTION AND TRAINING OF THE POLO PONY, <i>Cullum</i> .....	5.00
STABLE AND SADDLE, <i>McTaggart</i> .....	5.00
STABLEWISE, <i>Goldschmidt</i> .....	5.00
TCHIFFELY'S RIDE ( <i>Argentine to U. S.</i> ) .....	3.00
THOROUGHBREDS AND HUNTERS, <i>Fawcett</i> .....	7.50
WAY OF A MAN WITH A HORSE, <i>Brooke</i> .....	7.00

(Prices include postage)

Order through THE CAVALRY JOURNAL  
1624 H STREET, N.W. WASHINGTON, D. C.

# The CAVALRY JOURNAL

PUBLISHED BI-MONTHLY BY  
THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION  
MAJOR CHARLES S. KILBURN, Cavalry, Editor

VOLUME XLVI, NUMBER 4

JULY-AUGUST, 1937

WHOLE NUMBER 202

Publication Date: August 25, 1937

## Contents

Cavalry in War (Reconnaissance) .....	Frontispiece	The Use of a Portable Amplifier (Loud Speaker) Outfit ...	356
<b>MAIN FEATURES</b>		Major John D. Hood, Cavalry.	
Some Comments on War .....	309	Will Rogers Memorial Rodeo, Colorado Springs, Colorado	357
Major General John L. Hines, Former Chief of Staff, U.S.A.		The Cavalry Unit, Peacock Military Academy .....	358
Military Application of Physical Geography .....	312	1st Lieutenant Donaldson W. Peacock, Cav.-Reserve.	
Major Edwin E. Schwien, Cavalry.		The Cavalry School Digest of Information .....	360
A Mobile Reserve .....	318	Defects in Heavy Machine Gun Training and a Proposed Revision—The Semi-Automatic Rifle—The Effective- ness of Cavalry Weapons Against Armored Vehicles, Low-Flying Aircraft and Machine Guns in Combat.	
Extract from "Cavalry Combat."		Revise Present Machine Gun Qualification Course .....	363
General Curely, Cavalry Leader and Trooper (Part II) ....	321	Major Darrow Menoher, 8th Cavalry.	
Lieutenant Colonel Chayanne de Dalmassy.		The Editor's Saddle .....	367
Forrest: Natural Fighting Leader of Fighting Men .....	329	Distinguished Contributor—Cavalry Combat—Retiring Editor—Letters to Editor—Cavalry School Visits Fort Knox—Position Available for Retired Mounted N.C.O. —Cavalry in the Foreign Press—Membership—Carrier for Projector M1 and Signals.	
Colonel Allen J. Greer, Field Artillery.		Notes from The Chief of Cavalry .....	369
Do You Know That? .....	332	What Would You Do?—The Cavalry Rifle Team As- sembly and Tryouts.	
Point-to-Point Racing at The Cavalry School .....	333	General Hawkins' Notes .....	373
1st Lieutenant Edwin H. J. Carns, Cavalry.		Letters to the Editor .....	374
The Cavalry School Visits Fort Knox .....	336	At the Cavalry School .....	375
Pride of Profession .....	342	List of Graduates, The Cavalry School, 1936-37 Courses —Cavalry School Equestrian Events—The Cavalry School Race Meeting.	
James Anthony Reilly.		With the Mechanized Cavalry .....	382
Brigadier General Charles Burnett, U. S. Army .....	343	Book Reviews .....	383
<b>SPECIAL ACTIVITIES</b>		American Race Horses of 1936—Our Gallant Madness— Europe in Arms—Towards Armageddon.	
United States Army Participates in The International Horse Show at Olympia (London) .....	344	Cavalry in the Foreign Press .....	385
Junior Cavalry of America .....	345	Sergeant F. W. Merten, DEML.	
Inspection of Stables As Conducted in The 2d Cavalry ....	347	Organization Activities .....	388
8th Cavalry Modified Pentathlon .....	350		
Annual Fort Ethan Allen Horse Show .....	352		
6th Cavalry Participates in 8th Brigade Maneuvers .....	354		
Major M. S. Williamson, 6th Cavalry.			

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR OPINIONS EXPRESSED IN PUBLISHED CONTRIBUTIONS

PUBLISHING OFFICE:  
1406 EAST FRANKLIN STREET  
RICHMOND, VA.

EDITORIAL OFFICE:  
1624 H STREET  
WASHINGTON, D. C.

Entered as second class matter at Richmond, Virginia, under the Act of March 3, 1879. For mailing at Special Rate of Postage provided in Section 412, Act of October 3, 1917. Copyright, 1936, by the U. S. Cavalry Association.

\$3.00 per year, foreign postage 50c additional. Single copy: 50c



# MILITARY BOOKS

TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF CAVALRY .....	\$ 4.50
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF COAST ARTILLERY... <i>Basic</i> .....	4.50
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF COAST ARTILLERY... <i>Advanced</i> .....	6.00
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF INFANTRY .....	4.00
TACTICS AND TECHNIQUE OF INFANTRY .....	5.75
BASIC MILITARY TRAINING .....	2.50
MAP READING, SKETCHING AND AERIAL PHOTOS... <i>Leatherette</i> .....	1.50
..... <i>Cloth</i> .....	1.25
..... <i>Paper</i> .....	1.00
MACHINE GUNNER'S POCKET MANUAL .....	1.75
..... <i>Plain</i> .....	1.75
..... <i>With clasp, map pocket and slate</i> .....	2.25
A MACHINE GUNNER'S NOTEBOOK, Campbell .....	1.00
OFFICER'S GUIDE .....	2.75
MAP INDEX (Gettysburg and Fort Benning) .....	1.00
MASS PHYSICAL TRAINING .....	3.00
RESERVE OFFICER'S EXAMINER .....	1.50
MILITARY MOTOR TRANSPORTATION .....	1.50
HISTORY OF CAVALRY, Denison .....	3.00
HISTORY OF THE THIRD U. S. CAVALRY, Deibert .....	2.00
INEVITABLE WAR, Stockton, \$7.50 .....	6.00
INFANTRY IN BATTLE .....	3.00
THE OLD SERGEANT'S CONFERENCES .....	1.50
..... <i>Cloth \$1.00, Leatherette</i> .....	1.50
JEB STUART, Thomason .....	2.00
BEDFORD FORREST AND HIS CRITTER COMPANY .....	5.00
FUNDAMENTALS OF MILITARY STRATEGY, Robinson .....	2.50
BALCK'S TACTICS .....	1.75
ARMY ENGINEERING, Mitchell .....	3.00
THE DEFENSE OF DUFFER'S DRIFT (A tactical classic) .....	.50
THE BATTLE OF BOOBY'S BLUFFS (A tactical classic) .....	.75
TERRAIN EXERCISES, Waldron .....	1.50
PRINCIPLES OF COMMAND, Jones .....	1.00
OUTLINES OF THE WORLD'S MILITARY HISTORY, Mitchell .....	5.00
STEELE'S AMERICAN CAMPAIGNS (2 vols.) .....	10.00
..... <i>per set</i> .....	10.00
BALANCING DAILY DIETS, Perley .....	2.11
BLANK FORMS FOR MENU DEVELOPMENT OR ANALYSIS .....	1.25
FIELD SERVICE REGULATIONS .....	.75
THIRTY-MINUTE TALKS, Stewart and Waldron .....	1.50
NATIONAL DEFENSE (reference data) .....	.75
THE PROFESSION OF ARMS, Colby .....	1.50
COMMANDO (BOER WAR CAVALRY NARRATIVE), Reitz .....	1.25
A BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF OUR CIVIL WAR, Dodge .....	2.25
REVOLT IN THE DESERT, Lawrence .....	1.00
LIVES OF A BENGAL LANCER, Yeats-Brown .....	1.00
COURT-MARTIAL PRACTICAL GUIDE .....	1.00
FLAGS OF THE WORLD, Waldron .....	.50
COMPANY ADMINISTRATION .....	1.75
..... <i>Cloth</i> .....	1.75
..... <i>Paper</i> .....	1.25
ARMY POSTS AND TOWNS, Sullivan .....	3.00
A GENERAL STAFF OFFICER'S NOTES .....	1.50
BALANCING DAILY DIETS—PERLEY'S SYSTEM .....	2.10
BLANK FORMS FOR MENU DEVELOPMENT OR ANALYSIS .....	1.25

**We can obtain any other book for you**

*The prices in this list are postpaid. Write for our discounts.*

**Order Through THE CAVALRY JOURNAL**  
**1624 H Street, N. W. Washington, D. C.**



Col. J. S. Spaulding  
9-18-37

# The United States Cavalry Association

Organized November 9, 1885

## DESIGN

1. *The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.*—ARTICLE III OF THE CONSTITUTION.

## OFFICERS

### President

MAJOR GENERAL LEON B. KROMER

### Vice-President

COLONEL ALEXANDER M. MILLER, JR.

### Acting Secretary and Treasurer

MAJOR CHARLES S. KILBURN, Cavalry

## EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

MAJOR GENERAL WILLIAM K. HERNDON, 24th Cavalry Division

BRIGADIER GENERAL N. C. BOLTON, 54th Cavalry Brigade

COLONEL GUY KENT, Cavalry

COLONEL WILLIAM W. GORDON, Cavalry

COLONEL JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry

COLONEL ADNA R. CHAFFEE (Cavalry), General Staff

COLONEL VINCENT A. CARROLL, 305th Cavalry

LIEUTENANT COLONEL WILLIAM NALLE (Cavalry), General Staff

MAJOR WILLIAM J. YETTON, 462d Armored Car Squadron

## MEMBERSHIP

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and noncommissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, N.W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

## DUES AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

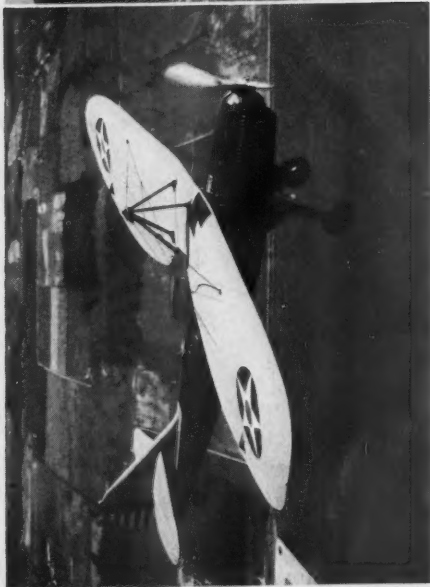
There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$3.00, which includes subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rate of \$3.00 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 50 cents additional.

*Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address. Changes in address are made only on notification.*



*Distant, close, battle, and ground reconnaissance.*



*Distant, close and battle reconnaissance.*



*Distant, close, battle and ground reconnaissance in darkness, mud, woods and under all abnormal conditions and circumstances.*

# CAVALRY IN WAR

**RECONNAISSANCE:** The procurement of military information.

**Purpose:** To gain information upon which to base tactical operations or strategical combinations and maneuvers.

"If one could only be acquainted beforehand with the enemy's designs, it would always be possible to defeat him, even with an inferior force. . . ."

(Frederick: Military instructions to his generals.)

S

W  
peace  
nume  
the u  
terna  
stand  
elem  
nation  
it be  
from  
that  
Ev  
for v  
citize  
tions  
tum,  
nation  
and p  
tions  
to de  
but h  
the e  
ration  
durin  
Sin  
seriou  
A pr  
is the  
But I  
Ame  
upon  
count  
stand  
civiliz  
table  
believ  
that t  
burde  
reach  
richer  
discu  
W  
doctr  
ment  
the se  
tween  
trial.  
find?  
a pan  
called  
for or

# SOME COMMENTS ON WAR

By Major General John L. Hines, Retired

Former Chief of Staff, United States Army

WAR has been defined as the armed conflict between states, which takes place after all of the agencies of peace and negotiation have failed. The causes of war are numerous. The study of most wars, however, will show the underlying cause to have been economic. Any international situation which tends to reduce the existing standard of living of the citizens of any state contains elements of war. Consequently, the more prosperous a nation, the more vulnerable it is to this condition, unless it be so prepared as to discourage a contentious nation from carrying a controversy from a stage of discussion to that of war.

Every nation has its own conception of preparedness for war, usually based on national characteristics of its citizens, geography, resources and other vital considerations. The conduct of war may be compared to momentum, which is defined as mass times speed. That is, some nations depend upon a large force immediately available and prepared to strike with maximum speed. Other nations feel that it is more commensurate with national needs to depend upon a smaller force, immediately available, but backed with vast resources; prepared to hold during the early stages of a conflict, and relying upon an acceleration of power as time goes on. The United States has, during its entire history, resorted to the latter system.

Since the last great war, the world has given deep and serious thought to the replacement of war by arbitration. A prime reason for the increased attention to this subject is the tremendous and wasteful expense of modern war. But let us approach the question of arbitration from an American point of view. From the first we must proceed upon the hypothesis that the United States is the richest country in the world today, and has created an average standard of living never before equalled in the history of civilization. Therefore, when dealing over the council table with less fortunate nations, it is a fair assumption to believe that there would be an undercurrent of feeling that the richer nation should carry a larger portion of the burden and an equalized settlement would be hard to reach. In any discussion under normal circumstances, a richer nation has little to gain and much to lose in such a discussion.

We have in the daily routine of legal life the constant doctrine of negotiation; for every court action is the settlement of an issue between contending parties. It may be the settlement of a suit in a civil court or a settlement between the state and an individual in the case of a criminal trial. In either case, when tried before a jury, what do we find? We find that, to select a jury of twelve members, a panel of from fifty to several hundred citizens is often called. Each side realizes that from its own point of view, for one reason or another, many of those called for jury

service will be prejudiced. Race, religion, profession, or varied other grounds create partiality. If this be true in a small community, how much more evident will it be among nations where racial ties are so deeply rooted and, in many cases, the life of the state threatened. From an international scope, elements, too numerous to mention, also creep in as, spheres of influence, bases of raw material, exchange balances, and so on.

The world may be divided, roughly, into two classes of nations; the "Haves" and the "Have-Nots." The "Haves" are those nations self-sufficient in foodstuffs and facilities and raw materials essential to production under the modern industrial age.

In every area, where deep unrest prevails and apprehension for peace is felt, there is inevitably involved a "Have-Not" nation. These nations are determined on policies that will provide their future self-sufficiency; or a division of those components that will insure a more equitable supply for all. The determined expansion of the "Have Not" populations is approaching the status of a crucial period in human progress.

Likewise, on every hand, there is increasing evidence that the same trend is found in individuals. The demands of the "Have-Nots" mount daily on an ascending scale.

To a reasonable man, the chance of equitable negotiation on the part of a rich but unprepared nation must be apparent.

If, from the foregoing analysis, it can be assumed that human nature and international relationships are yet at the stage where real negotiation cannot be expected, it is, therefore, not beyond the realms of imagination to believe that the world is not yet done with war. It might be interesting to go over the various wars in which our country has been engaged and look into their causes and the results of each on our national life.

Of course, our first war was that which we call the Revolutionary War. It was in truth the third great revolution among those of Anglo-Saxon blood. The first having taken place in 1642 in England, which forever settled, among those of this blood, the liberty of the individual. The second was also fought in England in 1688, which guaranteed to the individual the right to his religion. And our revolution determined in very emphatic fashion the fact that the state cannot tax its citizens without proper representation. However, the important result of this war to Americans lies in the birth of the nation—a nation destined to become the model of future generations—the first nation in which the citizens thereof exercise the right to franchise on no other grounds than that of citizenship—a nation where every man enjoys the same rights, privileges, and opportunities in achieving fame, fortune, and position.



Our second war came in 1812. We fought that war in defense of our international rights upon the seas. It was fought in order to demonstrate to a contemptuous Europe that the United States was ever ready to defend its rights, either on land or sea. We find that our principal achievements in that war came from the performance of the navy. Our ships were equal or superior to the vessels which confronted us. As a result of this apparent superiority in vessels and the men who manned them, and having established the rights of our commerce to travel unhampered upon the seas, our maritime activities spread over the entire world. The American clipper ship was known in every harbor. Commerce grew with increased strides, our northern mills expanded, and the southern cotton planter had the world for his market. It might be said that the American standard of living started on the up grade from that period of our history. And our ultimate victory, gained more through a kind providence than feats of arms, created for us a measurable national prestige abroad, where previously existed the impression that we were a small, distant country without culture or importance.

In the year 1845, we entered into our third war, the Mexican War. General Grant in his memoirs speaks of this campaign as the most unjust war which a large and powerful country ever inflicted upon a smaller and weaker one. However, the roots of this war lay deep in the national-political and psychological sentiments of those days. The question of slavery divided two great sections of the country. The politicians of the south sought every legitimate means to expand into territory that would naturally support their views. More territory meant more elective offices, which in turn meant additional legislative votes.

The pulse of expansion had gripped the psychological outlook of the nation. The frontier of that day was bulging to the west. The pioneers of Illinois, Kentucky, and Tennessee looked far beyond the Mississippi. The eyes of the more ambitious statesmen were focused on the Pacific. A struggle for additional territory to the west was inevitable.

Thus, from this war, there came under the American flag the majority of our land west of the Rocky Mountains. A land nourishing a population close to ten million souls, with great harbors and vast natural resources. A territory whose population at the present time almost equals that of the nation from which it came.

In 1861 came our fourth war, or the American Civil War, and what may well be called the fourth and last great revolution among Anglo-Saxon people. In that sense, it settled forever the question of the sovereignty of the subordinate elements of a sovereign nation. Its cause ran true to the principle of economics; for, with over a billion dollars invested in slaves, the economic element was very much alive. Northern factories, with increased production of various kinds, tended to free the nation from dependence on Europe. To protect their factories, the north demanded a high protective tariff. The agricultural south was devoted to free trade; a policy securing cheaper

manufactured articles and a wider market for its cotton. This great economical issue resulted in the clash of war. Yet, out of this war, the United States emerged a compact nation, whereas, during the preceding years of our national life, there existed twenty-odd potential sovereignties. The war produced a national conscience. Thereafter, when dealing with the United States, the world confronted a stabilized national opinion. Within our own borders it clarified the difference between states rights and state sovereignty, and from a confederacy in spirit a nation was produced. As in every major war, the machinery of industry was speeded up through shortage of man-power. Consequently, when peace came, supply exceeded demand along this line and a large portion of the best blood of the nation headed for new fields of endeavor. The rapid winning of the west was, indirectly a result of the Civil War.

The fifth war occurred in 1898 or, as we know it, the Spanish-American War. The cause of this war lay in humanitarian principles, together with the protection of a national doctrine. Within a few short months we had conquered a power rated as first-class. As a result, we found ourselves, for the first time in our national life, placed in undisputed position of a world power. We acquired new territory, a part of which affords important bases for our navy and maritime commerce. We again demonstrated that the Monroe Doctrine was on a working basis; a doctrine which enables the majority of the countries of this hemisphere to work out their own destiny without fear of aggression from overseas.

Our sixth and last war found us, in 1917, associated with the allied powers in the World War. We entered this war directly because of the violation of our neutrality and indirectly through the principle of economics. We emerged from it practically the leading country in the world. The war quickened our industrial life and temperament, solidified our national finances, and awakened us to our great potential national power. Today, the nation is almost a stranger to a dread disease—typhoid fever—as a result of experience gained in that war. We find our flag again upon the seven seas. And to me, perhaps of greatest value to future American generations, we found, at the end of the war, an enlightened public opinion in the United States which demanded and authorized the first sound policy for national defense which the country has ever possessed.

We should realize that the peace of the world has always rested in the hands of statesmen. It has been through the failure of statesmen and diplomats that peace has given place to war. The function of the army and navy has been to reestablish peace, and invariably our forces have successfully accomplished this objective. In none of our wars have American arms been finally defeated. The military forces of the country, frequently against almost insurmountable odds, have always carried our conflicts to a successful conclusion. The most rudimentary research of our military history will disclose to

anyone that in none of our wars have we ever been prepared. How then can we account for our ultimate success? One answer is through the enormous expenditure of life and money, and another is through the skill and character of our military leadership. No other position in which man is placed entails the crushing responsibility as does high command in battle. Especially is this responsibility staggering when the rank and file of the troops are filled with untrained men, officered with leaders themselves untrained, as has been the case in almost every American War. Sending twenty-five, fifty, or a hundred thousand men into modern battle means sleepless nights, torn nerves, and worn vitality. The responsibility alone of the questions of supply, care of the sick and wounded, and the coordination of movements tax those of the stoutest heart. For this reason, it is imperative that a military leader conserve his strength and protect his health if his decisions are to have the benefit of his training and ability. In high command, there must be no mistakes—for mistakes there means lives, treasure, and, in many cases, the very existence of a government and the welfare of a nation.

Never in the history of our country have our military leaders been able to take the field with an organized system of supply, trained staffs, or any of the many other essentials that go to make up an efficient force.

As the late Field Marshal Wolseley has said,

"The pleasing notion that, whenever war comes, money can obtain for the nation all that it requires, is still, as it would seem, an article of at least lip-faith with the politicians of the English-speaking race. Gold will certainly buy a nation powder, pills, and provisions, but no amount of wealth, even when supplied by a patriotic willingness to enlist, can buy discipline, training and skillful leading. Without these, there can be no such thing as an efficient army and success in the field against serious opposition is merely the idle dream of those who know not war."

We have those who speak of a million patriotic and determined men rushing to arms over night. Such questions as feeding this horde, arms, transportation, and coordination seems to have been of little concern. Let such philosophers attend any great gathering in America and observe the difficulty of controlling the traffic of a crowd of forty thousand individuals. With that picture in mind, compare the difficulty in maneuvering one hundred thousand men under the stress and confusion of battle. Leadership and discipline are the qualities that go to make such a task possible, and both are produced only by a long and arduous training. During much of our past history, the great aim of military preparedness has been to produce trained private soldiers. All efforts have been to produce him in numbers. The World War showed us that the American can be quickly molded into that cast, and the cry of every commander was for leaders. All abhor war from the viewpoint of the waste in human life. The truth is that more lives have been snuffed out in battle through inferior and inefficient leadership than for any other reason.

Under this patent principle, our efforts are now devoted to the production of leaders, principally through the medium of the Officers' Reserve Corps, Reserve Officers' Training Corps, and the Citizen Military Training Camps. With the "Army of the United States" we have foreseen the necessity of trained staffs, organized units and an organized system of supply from initial procurement to the final distribution to troops. We are operating under a policy that insures our national safety and so constructed as to offend no individual nor nation through the fear of our aggression. We depend upon a citizen army, and intelligent statesmen know that it is not through an army of this type that aggression is planned. We have a policy that fulfills our national need. It is a policy that deserves the continued and enthusiastic support of the nation.



#### NAPOLEON'S LVII MAXIM OF WAR

*When a nation is without establishments and a military system, it is very difficult to organize an army.*

# Military Application of Physical Geography

By Major Edwin E. Schwien, Cavalry

## I. INTRODUCTION

IN THE DOMAIN of tactics—the employment of troops in battle—the ultimate object of all maneuver is to permit the development of a fire power superior to that which the enemy can produce. Tactics, then, consists largely in the skillful utilization of the terrain so as to increase the effect of our fire power and decrease that of the enemy.

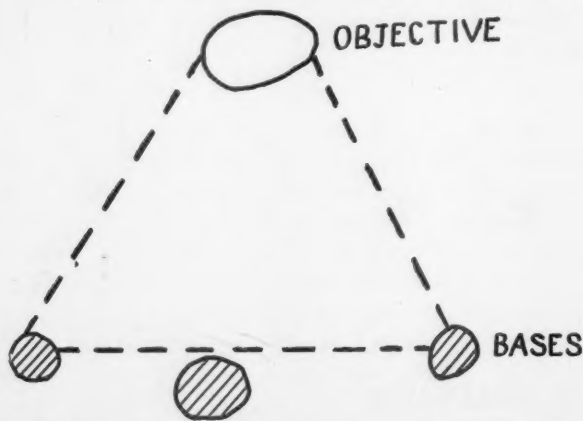
The subject of military geography, however, is beyond the scope of tactics. This implies terrain in the broad sense, terrain as applied to a theater of operations or even theaters of operation. Consequently one must think in strategic terms.

In the domain of strategy, the ultimate object of all maneuver is to place masses of troops in such geographic zones or areas as are advantageous for the tactical battle to follow.

Strategy and geography then are as inseparably bound as are tactics and terrain. In this article, it shall be my endeavor to impress the reader with the preponderant rôle played by geography in strategy. In particular we shall consider the far reaching effects of large forest areas, mountains and streams in a specific theater of operations. Before launching into the subject, however, we must make a brief résumé of past and present *strategic* conceptions in order that the reader may later more clearly perceive their true relation to geography.

## II. STRATEGIC CONCEPTIONS OF HISTORY

A study and comparison of strategic theories of the past indicate three distinct schools of thought.



The first doctrine which might be mentioned was that propounded by the 1780 Von Bülow. This school advocated a strategy based *primarily* on geometric conceptions. While that doctrine possessed the merit of objectivity, it neglected almost completely the terrain element of the theater of operations. This type of strategy consisted in organizing a line of operation bases opposite a strategic geographic objective so that the line of bases and the

objective formed an equilateral triangle. In order to maintain this triangle equilaterally, naturally the base of operations had to be widened in proportion to the distance to the strategic objective. Error: The geographic element between the line of bases and the objective was totally neglected.

The second school of thought had its principal advocate in Archduke Charles of Austria—one of Napoleon's ablest opponents. It endowed geography with an intrinsic value which determined everything including the strategic objective. According to this school, geography was the dominant factor in the choice of a theater of operations.

Finally we find Clausewitz, Von Moltke the elder and Foch insisting on a different point of view—the use of geography as an aid to strategy and not the reason for its existence.

History has shown conclusively, that this third conception is beyond doubt the correct one. This conception, of course, recognizes the relative value of the geometric conception. Usually the final *strategic* objective is the destruction of the armed forces of the enemy. Intermediate *geographic* objectives are designated usually so as to place armies in favorable positions to accomplish *tactically* the final destruction of the enemy forces. This school recognized the fact that there are frequently geographic objectives which are of vital importance from a morale or economic point of view. In such situations, the taking of the geographic objective may destroy completely the efficacy of the armed forces. These objectives must not be overlooked. Von Kluck made a fatal error in 1914 when he neglected the French nerve center of Paris. The capture of the French capital would not only have shaken the morale of the French nation, but what is still more important would have practically paralyzed the supply system of the French Army which was the main strategic objective. The Briey iron region constituted one of the principal geographic objectives of the Germans in 1914.

The writings of Foch, Clausewitz, Von Moltke the elder and Von Schlieffen show a marked similarity of thought. All four have based their studies on Napoleon, and seemed to have been able to deduce therefrom the true relationship of geography to strategy. Both Foch and Von Schlieffen suffered the misfortune of having their original ideas modified to such an extent that they became inoperative in 1914.

In order to avoid abstract theorizing in this treatise we shall study our subject by the case method. We shall analyze specific war plans in order to determine their application to the geography of a theater of operations. We have chosen for dissection, the Von Schlieffen Plan of the Germans and the French Plan XVII.

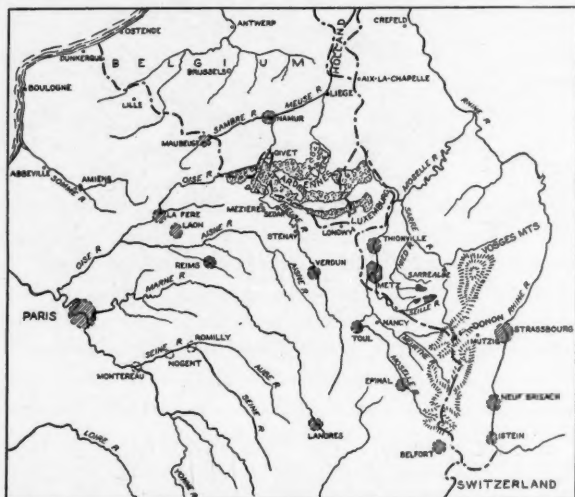
This done, we shall endeavor to point out what should have been the French plan of campaign had they properly





utilized the geographic features of the theater of operations.

Keeping in mind this brief résumé of the development of strategic thought we shall now examine the Von Schlieffen Plan before its partial mutilation by the younger Von Moltke and compare its geographic factors with those to be found in the French Plan XVII. While both of these plans were offensive, we are going to find a wide difference in the consideration of the geographic factors in each.



### III. GEOGRAPHIC FEATURES OF THE WESTERN FRONT

Let us begin by tracing the pre-war French-German frontier. It runs between neutral Switzerland on the south to neutral Belgium on the north. Just north of the Swiss frontier, we find the wide valley of the upper Rhine River extending north from the French fortress of Belfort. To the west of this valley we follow the frontier along the crest of the difficult Vosges Mountains to a point called the "Donon." It then moves to the northwest along the Seille River and across the Moselle between Nancy and the strong German fortifications of Metz where it joins Belgium at Longwy. In southern Belgium we see a large region of rough wooded country known as the Ardennes. To the north of the Ardennes is the valley of the lower Meuse River which flows into Holland just north of Liege.

In the region between Switzerland and Belgium we note that the rivers parallel more or less the frontier. On the German side we find the Sarre, and the two Nies. On the French side, we see the Seille, the Meurthe, the Moselle, the Meuse, and still farther into the interior the Aisne, the Marne, the Aube, the Seine, the Yonne and finally the Loire.

On the French side of the Vosges Mountains along the line of the Moselle and Meuse Rivers we find a chain of highly fortified areas among the more important of which are: Belfort, Epinal, Toul, Verdun, and Namur. Further to the west are the fortified zones of Langres, Reims, Laon, La Fere, and Paris.

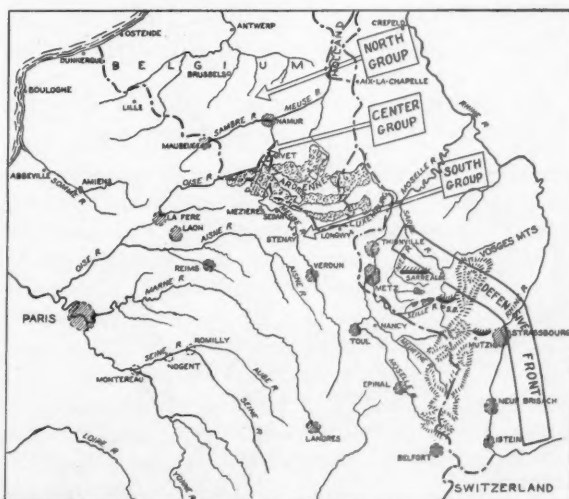
On the German side are the fortified bridgeheads of the Rhine from Istein to Strasbourg and the highly organized zone of Metz—Thionville.

Now just a word on political geography. Switzerland, almost impregnable by nature has strong fortifications defended by a large highly efficient army. On the other hand, that part of Belgium north of the Ardennes offers no natural obstacles of importance to an advance from either the east or west, and the Belgian Army is hardly equal to the Swiss.

### IV. THE VON SCHLIEFFEN PLAN

The Von Schlieffen Plan had its origin in a memorandum written in 1905 by Count Von Schlieffen. Let us quote it:

"France should be regarded in its entirety as an enormous fort. On her eastern frontier, the Belfort-Verdun sector is almost impregnable. On the other hand the front: Mezieres-Maubeuge-Lille-Dunkirk, while fortified, has large undefended gaps. It is on this latter front we should attempt to penetrate. If we are successful in our initial efforts on this part of the front, we shall find a second line of defense along the line of the Aisne, to Reims, thence northwest to La Fere. Without doubt this line has been selected by the French in expectation of a German offensive debouching south of the line: Meuse-Sambre and neglecting any idea that we may advance to the north of this line. Consequently it is essential that we concentrate a strong mass to the north of the Meuse. Seven-eighths of our total effectives should be disposed on the Crefeld-Metz Front while the balance consisting of five Army Corps and three Cavalry Divisions guard the front from Metz to Switzerland. The offensive mass north of Metz should be divided into three groups:



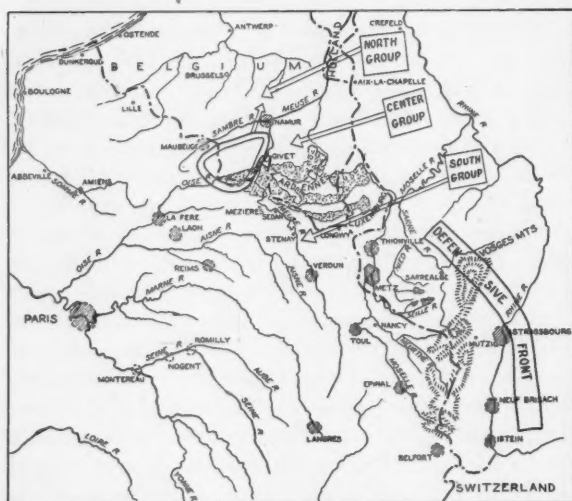
The north group to operate north of the Meuse should be the strongest and should be able to quickly take the line: Brussels-Namur. By means of its second and third echelon divisions it should then be able to outflank any French extension to the west of the line: Verdun-Laon-

La Fere and if necessary even turn Amiens or Abbeville from the west.

The center group must strike the line of the Meuse between Namur and Mezieres. It will be assisted in its crossing by the enveloping movement of the north group.

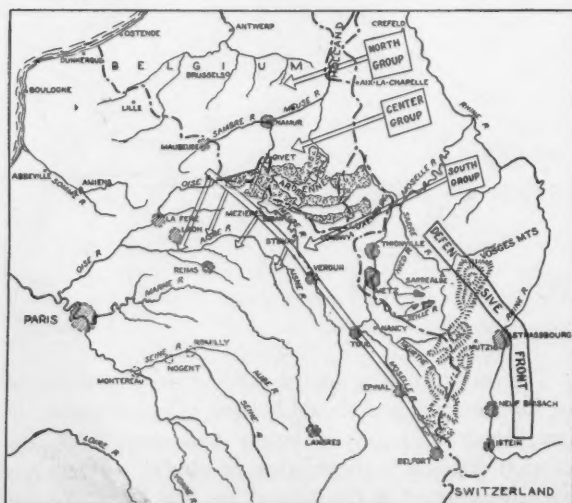
The south group will strike the Meuse between Mezieres and Verdun. Its crossing will be facilitated by the flanking movements of the center group to its north.

At mobilization, field fortifications should be constructed along the Nied River from Metz to Sarrebr. The area of Sarrebourg will also be fortified so as to effectively block the corridor between the lake regions of the upper Seille and the Vosges Mountains. This makes a cul-de-sac of northern Lorraine with its only opening

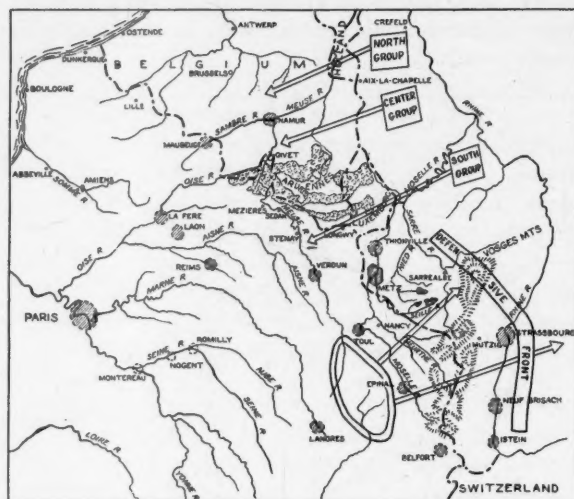


through the Rhine valley. This valley will be rendered secure by the fortified line of Mutzig-Strasbourg and the bridgeheads of Neufbrisach and Istein. Under these conditions, five Corps and three Cavalry Divisions will suffice for the front south of Metz.

The French are capable of attempting to block the above outlined strategic plan in one of three ways:



1. *1st Capability.*—They might counterattack our right from the line of the Sambre. This would mean an early concentration of a large part of their armies in lower Belgium, consequently a violation of Belgium before our troops have reached Brussels. This is not likely. However, should it be attempted, our right wing will be strong enough to meet any eventuality.



2. *2d Capability.*—The French may fall back from the line of the Meuse pivoting on Verdun. In this event, wherever may be found the French left (west) flank, the north group will possess the strength to envelop it. Should the French attempt to hinge their left on the fortified area of Paris or attempt to cover Paris indirectly by the use of a "flank" position to the south, say along the Seine, the north group will swing to the west of this city, while the center and south offensive groups will hammer the line: Verdun-Paris to prevent any transfer of troops.

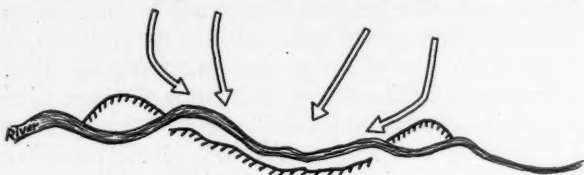
3. *3d Capability.*—The French might attempt offensive operations between Metz and Strasbourg or attempt to cross the upper Rhine. In this case they will be stopped by our defenses of the natural corridors of advance as well as by the alarming news they will receive concerning their north flank."

We know from history, how narrowly this plan missed success. Its failure was due probably to the modifications injected by Von Moltke. Throughout the plan, one sees a clear conception in the mind of Von Schlieffen of the relation of geography to strategy. His strategy is frankly offensive. *The relationship of geography to strategy can be clear only when we know the strategic objective.* Knowing whether our strategy will be offensive, defensive, or opportunist, we can then consider geographic features in the proper proportion.

In the Von Schlieffen scheme one also sees the tremendous importance placed on the Sere de Riviere chain of French fortresses from Belfort to Verdun. It determined Von Schlieffen not only to extend the theater of a new Franco-German war over Belgium and the north of France but to situate the center of gravity of his dispo-

sitions on the north. Having decided upon the strategic offensive, Von Schlieffen examines the geography and decides that the front south of Verdun with its parallel lines of rivers perpendicular to a German advance reinforced by the great chain of fortresses is impregnable.

He sees in the terrain north of the Meuse, a path unbroken by any obstacle save the Somme River. He visualizes successive river lines of French defense with almost uncanny perception. He sees the possibility of the French armies uncovering Paris and attempting an indirect de-



fense of their capital by drawing the Germans to the southeast, a thing spoken of by Foch in 1911 and actually borne out by the events of 1914. By a study of the terrain he perceives the canalization of any possible French attack south of Metz to the neutral corridors of advance. These he blocks with fortifications. There is a complete adjustment of fortification to the scheme of strategic maneuver.

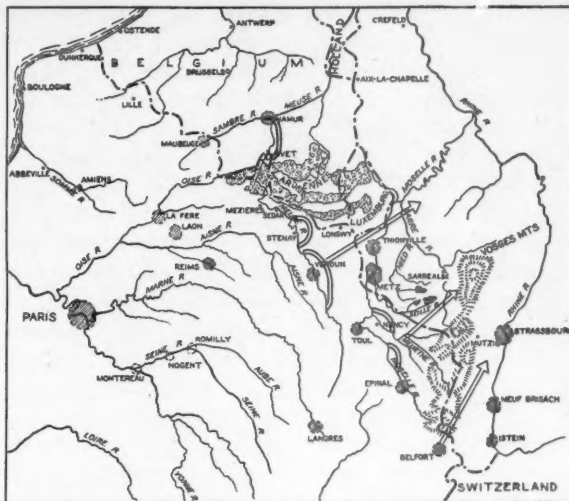
He does not foresee however the use by the French of offensive bridgeheads in the defense of successive river lines. This theory expounded by Clausewitz, the elder Von Moltke, Foch, and a number of others consisted in maintaining offensive bridgeheads at intervals along the enemy side of a river when defending the near side. This had the effect of canalizing enemy attacks to the intervals between bridgeheads while the latter would later serve as departure bases for counteroffensives. The line of the Meuse and the Moselle was so organized by the French. On the 6 September, 1914 the possession of the bridgeheads of Romilly, Nogent, and Montereau enabled the French to launch their counteroffensive from the Seine.

In brief, the Von Schlieffen plan is simple, objective and complete in its utilization of the terrain to further the strategic scheme of maneuver. The German national policy permitting a violation of Belgium greatly simplified the geographic element of their offensive strategy.

#### V. PLAN XVII

It is an erroneous although common belief that the French General Staff did not consider a violation of Belgium. The War Department fully recognized the military advantages of such a move, but they were blocked by the established national policy of France which forbade such a move. The General Staff then had to confine its Plan of Operations to the common frontier between Germany and France. So far, they were blameless. However the fetish of a general offensive led them into the errors of Plan XVII.

The fundamental data for this plan are found in a document entitled "Basis of Plan XVII." Later this memorandum was developed into a document called "The Di-



rectives for the Concentration."

Let us examine the considerations given to the topography of the theater of operations.

The first point mentioned is the line of the Meuse from Givet to Namur. It will be noticed that this angle of the Sambre-Meuse lies wholly in Belgian territory. The original memorandum calls attention to the necessity of occupying rapidly the crossings of the Meuse along this line upon the receipt of news of a German violation of Belgium. An offensive bridgehead was also to be organized at once east of Stenay.

The next front considered was the line of the Moselle-Meuse between Epinal and Verdun. While offensive bridgeheads already existed at Epinal, Toul and Verdun there was too much interval between them to properly debouch large scale offensive operations using them as bases. Consequently the author insisted on the necessity of organizing solid defensive positions on the heights east of the Meuse between St. Mihiel and Dun-sur-Meuse and on the Grande Coronne east of Nancy as well as the eastern exits of the Forest of Charmes. With such an organization, the French Armies would be able to launch their offensive from the line of the Moselle-Meuse with a firm defensive base or line of departure on the east banks of these rivers. The author forgot the primary purpose of these bridgeheads: that is, to serve as bases for a counter-offensive not for an offensive.

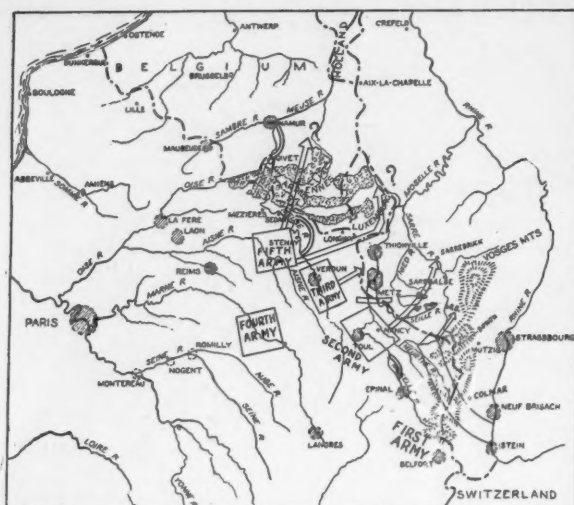
However, we see in this memorandum the importance attached to the organization of offensive bridgeheads—clearly the hand of Foch.

Thus, a general offensive along the common frontier decided upon, let us see how the document entitled "Directives for the Concentration" fits the maneuver to the topography.

We read first a paragraph called "Intentions of the Commander-in-Chief."

It states that the French Armies will take the offensive with their entire forces—that "the enemy will be attacked whenever and wherever found." Obviously we infer that this means regardless of unfavorable terrain





conditions. Consequently, this paragraph shows a total disregard of the primary purpose of strategy which we have stated is to place troops in favorable geographic locations for the tactical battle.

In the following paragraph of the Directive, two principal offensives are prescribed.

The First and Second Armies were to attack between the Rhine and Metz. The First Army advancing astride the Vosges, was to fix the enemy at Colmar and Neuf Brisach while its left moved on Sarrebourg. The Second Army, attacking in the direction: Nancy-Sarrebruck and covering its left against the fortress of Metz, was to make its principal effort on its right in order to turn the lines of the Meurthe and the Nieds by encircling their sources.

The other principal effort was to be made on the north by the Fifth Army. The vague nebulous mission given Laurezac, its commander, should more than compensate for all later criticism directed at him. This Army had to base its maneuver on the Germans. In case the latter did not violate Belgium, the Fifth Army was to advance from the Meuse bridgeheads between St. Mihiel and Sedan on the line: Thionville-Luxembourg and drive the enemy to the north. Note that its path lay across the front of the fortified area of Thionville-Metz.

In case of a violation of Belgium the Fifth Army was to move north into the Ardennes, while the Fourth Army in reserve would fill the gap between it and Metz.

The Third Army's mission was to link up these two principal efforts on the north and south and invest Metz.

In brief this was the famous Plan XVII. Did the geography of the theater of operations lend itself to the accomplishment of this plan?

Let us see.

The outline of the former Franco-German frontier took the form of a right angle with the apex on the summit of the Vosges at a place called the Donon. This was especially so designed by the elder Von Moltke after 1871 in order to insure the Germans a converging offensive base against France. Conversely, a general offensive by

the French from this frontier would lead to divergent efforts, the troops south of the Donon debouching into the Alsatian Cul-de-sac while those on the other side of the angle would move on Sarrebruck. The left of the Sarrebruck attack would be open to a flank attack from Metz. Clever old gentleman, the elder Von Moltke.

To the north of the fortified system of Metz-Thionville, the Luxembourg area with its fine rail net furnishes an excellent concentration area for large German forces. These forces could move westward on the line of the Meuse any place between Stenay and Namur. Were the French Fifth Army to advance into the Ardennes, it might find large enemy masses threatening its right. This proposed action of the Fifth Army therefore takes no consideration of the possibility of the Germans using Luxembourg as a concentration area or the possibility of such forces making an abrupt push toward the Meuse between Givet and Namur. Complete disregard of enemy capabilities! The nature of the Ardennes region is also completely ignored. All corridors through this difficult region run from east and west not north and south, consequently any French forces moving north into the Ardennes were doomed from the beginning.

In short, geographical considerations were practically ignored in the preparation of Plan XVII. As to strategic comprehension of the terrain, the Von Schlieffen Plan is far superior to Plan XVII. True, it shows some lucidity when it assigns the only possible zone of advance along the common frontier to the First and Second Armies, even though it did commit the grave error of overflowing a part of this offensive into the strongly fortified Alsatian plain.

As to the use of the Fifth Army, there appears to have been a complete lack of strategic objectivity.

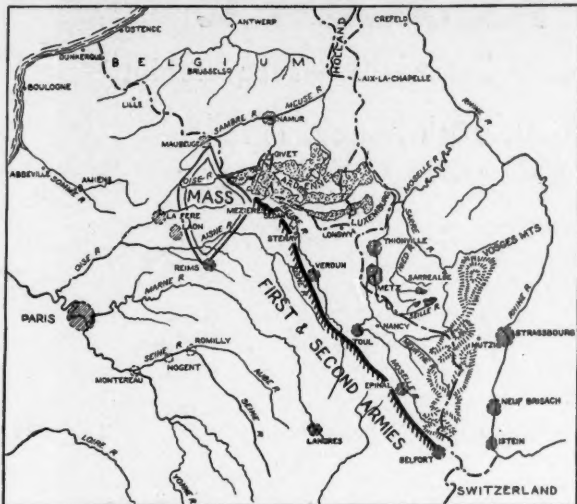
Plan XVII has been severely criticized on a number of occasions. Let's be constructive. Let us briefly reconstruct it as it should have been, had due consideration been given to the geographic element of the theater of operations. The following ideas represent the best foreign military thought on this subject. Incidentally, although this is pure surmise, the present French war plan may be along these lines.

## VI. RECONSTRUCTION OF PLAN XVII

We have mentioned previously that strategy falls into three sub-divisions, offensive, defensive, and opportunist.

In spite of the fact that the French Army by temperament and training was frankly oriented toward the offensive, their General Staff should have realized the impossibility of the offensive on the Belfort-Sedan front.

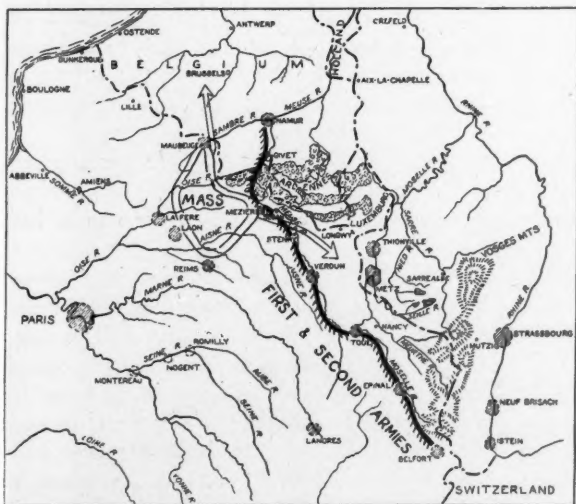
Neutrality of Belgium then being a fixed national policy, an expectant attitude on the part of the French was thereby imposed on them by geographic considerations. Even Von Schlieffen as you will remember, considered the fortified line of the Moselle and Meuse impregnable. The French realized the Germans would attack, they knew that the German mobilization would be completed before their own. The great question however was: would



the Germans violate Belgium? Even though the Germans were to do this, they believed in the old adage "the best defense is to attack." The result is history.

Now that we know the difficulties of offensive operations south of the fortified region of Metz, the practical impassability of the Ardennes as a geographic feature in addition to it being neutral territory, the following solution is suggested.

The First and Second Armies should hold defensively the fortified line of the Moselle and Meuse between Belfort and Mezieres. It would be desirable to extend this defensive farther north. Notice however that Givet is at the tip of a glove finger preventing any defense of the west bank of the Meuse between Givet and Mezieres without violating Belgian territory. This was a little



provision inserted by the Prussians in the treaty of 1815 and it attested to their strategic abilities.

The other three French Armies should concentrate in a position of readiness in the area: Maubeuge-Reims-Mezieres. The mission of this group should be as follows:

1. At the first indication of a violation of Belgium by the Germans, to seize and occupy defensively the line of the Meuse between Mezieres and Namur, holding this at all costs as a defensive wedge with a relatively small detachment. The purpose of this defensive wedge would be similar to the offensive strategic penetration employed by Napoleon preliminary to an operation from a central position, that is, to cause a separation of enemy forces so that they might be defeated in detail.

2. To be prepared to maneuver from a central position either to the southeast against a German offensive south of the Ardennes or to the northeast in the direction of Brussels against a German offensive north of the Meuse.

In case of defeat in the frontier battles, the plan should consider successive defensive positions along the lines of the Aisne, the Marne, the Seine with its tributaries and finally the Loire. Offensive bridgeheads should be established at intervals along these river lines prior to the outbreak of hostilities so that a general counteroffensive could be launched at an opportune time.

Such a plan had at least a chance to succeed even had the Von Schleffen plan been carried out. In contemplating a strategic offensive, however, in spite of the geographic obstacles of the Rhine River, the Vosges Mountains, the lake region of the Upper Seille, the fortified area of Metz and the unfavorable topography of the Ardennes, plan was doomed to failure. It followed a purely geometric conception of the strategy of 1780 without reference to geography. In the Von Schlieffen Plan, on the other hand, we find the ideal adaptation of the geography of the theater of operations to frankly offensive and objective strategy.

Like France, our military policy is dictated by our national policy and our choice of theaters of war will be imposed upon us by national policy. We must utilize the geography of the theater as we find it. That geography must play a preponderant rôle in deciding the type of strategy we employ.

The military importance of physical geography has not been decreased with the advent of rapid means of transportation of troops, motorized or mechanized nor with the development of aviation. On the contrary, the utilization of obstacles becomes, if anything, of even greater importance than ever before to the success of strategic maneuver, whether this maneuver be offensive, defensive, or opportunist.

#### NAPOLEON'S II MAXIM OF WAR

*In forming the plan of a campaign, it is requisite to foresee everything the enemy may do, and to be prepared with the necessary means to counteract it. Plans of campaign may be modified, ad infinitum, according to circumstances—the genius of the general, the character of the troops, and the topography of the theatre of action.*

# A MOBILE RESERVE

Must Be a Fighting Element of Superior Battlefield Maneuverability

## The Attack on Moreuil Wood, 30th March, 1918\*

From Chapter Ten, *Cavalry Combat*

### PART I

THE RAPID advance of the Germans in the drive toward Amiens, France, created a gap in the line in the vicinity of Moreuil Wood. This wood was quite thick and was located on high commanding ground, which it was very important to hold. The British 20th Division occupied the line to the north with its right in Rifle Wood. To the south, the left of the French Army was somewhere in the vicinity of Moreuil Village, which left a gap between the British and French Armies approximately three miles in width and which contained the dominating and important terrain feature of Moreuil Wood. It was vitally necessary that this gap be closed, and the British 2d Cavalry Division was selected by the XIX Corps, to which it was attached, for this mission. The 2d Cavalry Division, including the 3d Cavalry Brigade, after making two marches of twenty miles per day, arrived in the region of the Avre River and went into bivouac.

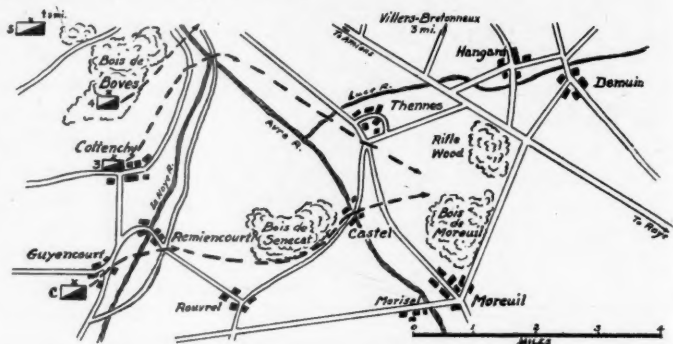
#### THE CANADIAN CAVALRY BRIGADE

On the night of 29-30 March, the Canadian Cavalry Brigade, attached to the 2d Cavalry Division, was in bivouac in the woods near the village of Guyencourt, and was the element of the 2d Division which was nearest to the division objective. Accordingly, at 8:30 AM, the brigade commander, General Seely, received the following instructions, orally, from the division commander, General Pitman. He was told that the enemy was reported to be in Moreuil Wood on the right of the 20th Division. The Canadian Brigade was given the mission of crossing the River Avre at Castel as quickly as possible to engage and delay the enemy. It was to work in conjunction with the 3d Cavalry Brigade; *the first to arrive was to act on its own initiative and would be closely supported by the second.*

#### MARCH TO OBJECTIVE

General Seely had his brigade saddled and ready to move, so he marched at once with one squadron of the Royal Canadian Dragoons as the advance guard. The main body followed in the following order of march: Royal Canadian Dragoons (less one squadron); Lord Strathcona's Horse; Fort Garry Horse. (The above-named units had three squadrons each.)

\*From *Canadian Defense Quarterly*, 1925; and *British Cavalry Journal*, 1923, 1924, and 1927.



The brigade commander thought that it would be necessary to force a crossing at Castel, but they were unopposed at this point and continued eastward to the northern extremity of Moreuil Wood. Here they met heavy rifle and machine-gun fire from the northern face of the wood. General Seely decided to attack and capture the wood.

#### ATTACK ON MOREUIL WOOD

At 9:00 AM the British commander issued the following order: "*Royal Canadian Dragoons: Advance guard squadron to clear the NW corner of wood. One squadron to gallop to SW face of wood. One squadron to gallop to NE corner and endeavor to join up with the second squadron.*"

The squadron which was ordered to clear the northwest corner of the wood moved out at a gallop, covered by Vickers machine-gun fire. They were exposed to heavy rifle and machine-gun fire, but engaged the enemy in hand-to-hand fighting and forced the Germans to retreat southward through the woods.

The strength of these units at this time was approximately sixty per cent of that authorized. The squadron just mentioned above, instead of having 160 men, had only 98.

A very interesting account of this action is given by Major Timmis, who commanded this squadron of the Royal Canadian Dragoons: As they entered the woods, they found that bullets were coming from above, where the Germans had mounted machine guns in the trees. In some cases the Boche were kind to prisoners and seemed to lack enthusiasm for the war. One man was taken prisoner by a group of the enemy; the German sergeant in charge took his rifle and told the soldier to wait there until he returned. He never returned, so the British soldier rejoined his organization. A number of soldiers rejoined

Cavalry not required on the flanks or to mask gaps in the battle front is held as a mobile reserve with a view to its employment in the pursuit or for meeting the crisis in combat which demand the highest degree of mobility.—U. S. Field Service Regulations, 1923.



their units with their wounds dressed; apparently the Germans made no effort, in some cases to retain prisoners. The fighting, however, was fierce, and the casualties heavy. This particular squadron of dragoons, which a few days previously had a strength of 160 and went into this battle with 98 men, came out with only 29.

The squadron which was ordered to gallop against the southwest face of the wood received heavy machine-gun fire from the enemy between Moreuil and Morisel, and was forced to enter the wood at a point about half way along the southwest face.

The squadron which was ordered to attack the northeast corner of the wood suffered very heavy casualties from fire all along the northern face of the wood, and upon arriving at the northeast corner, wheeled to the left and took cover in the draw to the north.

#### LORD STRATHCONA'S HORSE

Lord Strathcona's Horse now arrived and was ordered into the battle. One squadron was to gallop to the northeast corner of the wood in support of the first squadron of dragoons, and the other two squadrons attacked, dismounted, southeastward through the wood.

Lieutenant Gordon Muriel Flowerdew, the son of an English gentleman farmer, was the young man who

"Bullets hummed like insects all about us. Horses plunged, screamed. Men fell from horses' backs and lay still, or ran forward to catch the stirrups of their comrades. It all seemed strange, yet natural.

"I went with Flowerdew to a point where we could see past the corner of the wood. He looked fresh, fit, ready for any desperate deed. I pointed to a long thin column of Germans marching into the wood. He said, with his gentle smile, 'It is a splendid moment, sir. I will try not to fail you.'

"He wheeled his men into line, and then with a wild shout he started, his saber raised and shining. There were two lines of Germans facing him. Each column was about sixty strong, and equipped with machine guns. One was two hundred twenty yards behind the other.

"Flowerdew checked his horse and pivoted to give orders to Lieutenant Harvey. 'Dismount your men,' he said, 'and after we've charged seize the machine guns.'

"Then the squadron, less one troop, went forward at the charge, slashing and stabbing with sabers. Machine guns and rifles spattered them, thinned them, knocked men out of saddles and dropped horses. Those who were left went on, tramping the gunners and riflemen; rode over the first gray column and into and over the second.

"Flowerdew, with two bullets in his chest and a gaping wound in each thigh, wheeled his men and led them back to saber the Germans who had survived. Seventy per cent of his men were dead or wounded. Flowerdew grinned, and crashed to the ground, dying.

"'We've won!' he shouted. 'Carry on!'

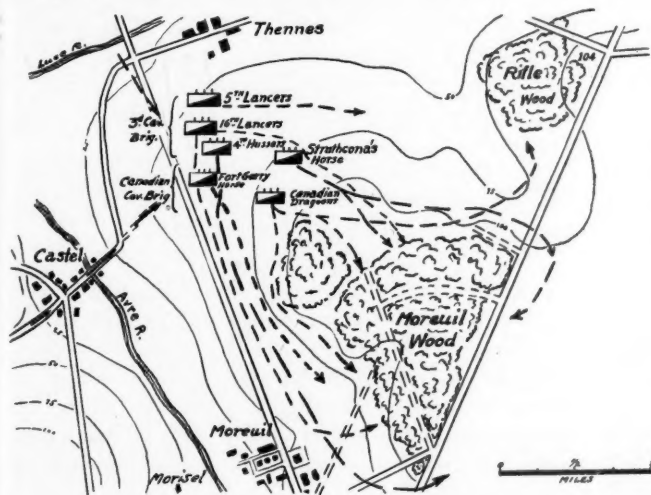
"His men established themselves in a little ditch that bordered the wood; and Harvey's troopers, who had captured the machine guns, joined them there.

"When I arrived with the supporting squadron, I found what was left of Flowerdew's men, huddled in twos or threes, each group with a captured machine gun, three or four dead Germans lying near each man. Seventy Germans had been killed by the sword. Probably in no other engagement in the war did the sword take such toll of dead.

"I saw two or three hundred others who had been killed by fire from their own machine guns. They lay in the wood and outside it. Our losses in the few brief moments of the engagement were three hundred men and more than eight hundred horses killed and wounded.

"Our Canadians fought with fanatic valor; but the enemy, now surrounded in the wood, fought equally well. Not one man surrendered. Hundreds were mowed down as they ran to join their comrades holding on to the southeast corner. Hundreds more stood their ground and were shot or bayoneted.

"As I rode through the woods on my charger *Warrior*, with the dismounted squadrons of Strathcona's Horse, I saw a handsome young Bavarian fire at a Canadian and miss. The next moment a bayonet was thrust through his



commanded the squadron which was sent to the support of the 1st Dragoon Squadron.

General Seely describes this charge in "Is this the man who won the World War," by Colonel Thwaites, as follows:

"It is curious how galloping horses seem to magnify in power and number as they charge. My brigade looked like a mighty host sweeping over the open country.

"I galloped up to Lieutenant Flowerdew, who commanded the leading squadron, and as we rode along together I told him his task was the most adventurous of all, but that I was confident he would succeed.

"The dragoons just ahead of us had suffered heavily before reaching the northeast corner of the ridge. But they had turned into the wood and engaged the enemy.

neck. He sank down, his back to a tree.

"Lie down!" I shouted to him, in German. 'A stretcher bearer will look after you.' His eyes blazed and color came into his ashen face. He snatched up a rifle and cried to me, even as he fired his last shot, 'Nein, nein! Ich will ungefangen sterben!' Then collapsed and died as he had wished; free, untouched by enemy hands. The German assault collapsed with him, then and there."

#### COLONEL THWAITES' COMMENTS

"The Germans didn't understand that charge of Flowerdew's. They interpreted it incorrectly. They didn't know those few hundred reckless Canadians were all that stood between them and overwhelming victory. They didn't understand that their charge was sheer effrontery, the last resource of armies facing chaos.

"But—does a squadron of a beaten and retreating army fling itself, without hope, upon the oncoming mass of the enemy? Do a few hundred men attack hundreds of thousands in a vain effort to stay their march? Ridiculous! These men must be the advance of the counterattack. The whole of the Allied Armies must be in back of them! Listen to them cheer! These are fresh men. Run! Sound the retreat! Fall back until we see the strength of the counterattack and can prepare to meet it!

"They fell back. Their golden moment was gone, never to return. *The hoofs of a horse had trampled an irresistible army into the earth! A man had won a war!*

"The Germans fell back and gave the Allies time to close the gap. It was never opened again until after the Armistice. It was sealed with Flowerdew's blood."

Lieutenant Flowerdew posthumously was awarded the Victoria Cross.

The two squadrons of Strathcona's Horse, making the dismounted attack, suffered many casualties, but advanced and joined the squadron which had just made the mounted attack. At 11:30 AM, the Canadian Brigade held three sides of the wood, but the Germans still were in possession of the center and southern edge.

#### FORT GARRY HORSE

While the above-described action was taking place, one squadron of Fort Garry Horse was sent to reinforce the dragoons, who had entered the southwest face of the wood, extending the line to the left. A second squadron was sent across the river to enfilade the enemy from a position on the high ground above Morisel.

Parenthetically, a German writer states that "the success of the cavalry at Moreuil Wood was due principally to the fact that the German infantry of 1918 (101st



Grenadiers, reservist organization) did not know how to use their rifles. Because of the short time available for training the reservist units were only partly trained in musketry." In speaking of the mounted attack, he states that "in some instances they were surprised, and that some of the men in their excitement failed to fix their bayonets. As a result, in the hand-to-hand fighting,

the Germans could only engage the mounted men with rifle fire which was not very effective at that close range. *Those armed with pistols were more successful in this kind of fighting.*"

(The American cavalry had discarded the saber, in favor of the pistol.)

Desperate fighting for possession of the wood continued throughout the day. The cavalry never succeeded in capturing the southern part of the wood, but they did hold the remainder until they were relieved by the 8th Infantry Division, at 2:00 AM, 31 March. When relieved, the Canadian Brigade withdrew to the Bois de Senecat.

In paying tribute to the Canadians in this section, in Sir Douglas Haig's Despatches there is the following statement:

"Our line in Moreuil Wood was restored by a brilliant counterattack carried out by the Canadian Cavalry Brigade, supported by the 3d Cavalry Brigade."

#### DISCUSSION

From this study of the action of the Canadian Cavalry Brigade, we have an example showing that horse cavalry can effectively be utilized as a mobile reserve for infantry. It can be sent quickly to fill a gap in the line until infantry units can be brought up to effect its relief. The present organization of *our* cavalry, with its many automatic weapons, particularly fits it for employment on such missions.

We have seen also that in actual warfare it is often necessary that cavalry commanders issue very brief, fragmentary orders; as they usually are the only type which time will permit.

The attack on Moreuil Wood is an excellent example of a piecemeal attack, where units are thrown into the fight as they arrive on the scene of action. This type of action, however, should only be employed where the time and space factors make it necessary.

The squadrons of the Royal Canadian Dragoons were thrown into the attack initially against objectives which were over a mile apart, making coordination of effort impossible. Thus, it eventually required the entire Canadian Cavalry Brigade, supported by the British 3d Cavalry Brigade, to capture the objective originally attacked by three squadrons.

# General Curély: Cavalry Leader and Trooper

By Lieutenant Colonel Chavane de Dalmassy

## PART II

IN 1810, affairs in Spain again filled the horizon with clouds, but the marriage of the Emperor Napoleon with Marie Louise was soon to open the era of peace and stability so desired by all. So, when, after nineteen years of hard marching and fighting across Europe, the 20th Chasseurs were sent to Nantes to participate in guarding the coastal frontier, Curély, was justified in envisaging at last a period of happy leisure. The city had received with pride and joy this fine regiment of Colbert's Brigade and the superb "swank" of all the officers, whose bravery and glorious feats were enviously recounted, caused feminine hearts to flutter gaily.

The homage and attentions of Squadron Commander Curély, whom she had met several times, seemed to make an impression on Mademoiselle Girand, daughter of the senior Naval Commissioner, Commander of the Port of Nantes. Curély, in passing through Lorraine had just settled up definitely his family affairs at Avillers and he was now thinking about getting married. He had been captivated by the charm, the intelligence and the kindness of Mademoiselle Girand and his request for her hand in marriage was accepted readily.

But hardly was the marriage celebrated when again the 20th Chasseurs were alerted for field service. In the early days of July the colonel received orders to put on the road for Spain, the 2d and 3d troops under the command of Major de Vèrigny.<sup>1</sup>

The 1st and 2d Troops continued to garrison Nantes under the command of Curély, since the colonel has just gone on leave.

This situation had obtained for six months when, at the beginning of February an order arrived directing a composite troop of 200 men be formed, under Curély's command, to be sent to Spain.

The war in Spain was guerilla warfare involving all sorts of ambushes and skirmishes requiring endurance on the part of the men as much as initiative and bravery. To fight bandits, reasoned Curély, one should use soldiers of similar temperament. So, in order to bring his troop up to the required strength, he selected "from the remaining troops all those commonly called unruly and generally known as 'bad eggs.'" Just four days sufficed for him to organize and instill order and discipline in this unit.

To this troop there was attached as assistant surgeon, a young surgical student from the civilian hospital at Nantes who, subject to the conscription laws, had enlisted in the 20th Chasseurs. His name was Angebaud. He was destined to remain in the regiment until after the campaign of France and to rise to the rank of second lieutenant. A most interesting manuscript, a running account

of his short military career "which he only abandoned as a point of honor and to prove his devotion to the homeland" is our most valuable source in following Curély in Spain.

"These two troops," says Angebaud, in speaking of Curély's command, "each composed of 100 men, nearly all of whom were old soldiers, were commanded by a man whose merit will always surpass the eulogies bestowed upon him; I speak of Major Curély, later, after the campaign of France, General Curély. Of a bravery which withstands every test, extremely well trained in his profession, with a knowledge of administration, no one performed his duties better than he nor knew better how to make others perform theirs. Just, fond of his soldiers, in spite of passing displays of harshness, his troop was a model of military bearing, neatness, and discipline. Always the first one mounted, reports were made to him on the last note of the bugle. Excepting at inspections



made by officers, he never allowed ranks to be broken until he had inspected the troop, time permitting."

It was on the 22d of February, 1811, that Curély left Nantes with his 200 Chasseurs well-mounted, equipped and armed to his satisfaction. He left behind, in the care of her family, his young wife, who in a few months was to give birth to their first son whose godfather was General Edward Colbert.

"We were escorted," says Angebaud, "by the officers remaining with the regiment at Nantes, as far as the village of Sournière, an hour's ride, where all dined sumptuously before saying farewell."

Curély is more sparing of details of the march which was to take them to Cerdagne, than Angebaud. "At the

---

**The reactions of a mounted command  
are a pure reflection of its leader**

<sup>1</sup>The station list of the 12th Military Division for July 15th, notes: "1st and 2nd Troops at Nantes and along the coast; 3rd and 4th Troops en route to Bayonne."



age of 20, age of illusions, to traverse 200 leagues of France horseback, thrilled me greatly," says Angebaud. Curély was content to say merely, "I arrived in Spain after 37 days, including seven rest days, without having left behind a single man or horse. Every day I inspected men and animals to assure myself of the condition of the men's uniforms and, above all, to discover those horses showing first signs of saddle sores; the remedy in such cases consists in readjusting the saddle, since there is no wound of this nature that is not occasioned by lack of care. By this procedure I did not have a single sore back."

In fact, all was uneventful except that the crossing of the Garonne gave some trouble because of the tide, the wind and the rain. "On March 22d," we read in Angebaud's manuscript, "we began to climb the mountains of the Pyrenees which were entirely covered with snow at that time of the year; an expanse of summits darkened by the shadows of one cast upon another, presented a picture of a turbulent sea. No sooner was one mountain climbed than a higher one rose before us. We led our horses by the bridle and our boots bothered us greatly in climbing those mountains covered with frozen snow and consequently very slippery. After four hours of marching we halted and we appreciated our meal very much, especially the wine and ham. Then, following a rough trail, we arrived at Tour de Carolles in French Cerdagne, where we remained in temporary bivouac in a meadow, waiting for orders which the major had requested of headquarters at Puycerda."

Curély was placed under the orders of General Garreau charged with investing the forts at Urgel; and the opportunity to distinguish himself was soon offered.

On April 15th he was sent to encounter 300 Spaniards reported coming to levy contributions at Puycerda. He departed with a hundred troopers, caught up with the Spaniards, charged them, handled them roughly, sabering all who did not succeed in fleeing, and returned with numerous prisoners. But those were only police expeditions which were of little interest to him. However, they were to be repeated in the surrounding neighborhood of Montlouis where the troop was garrisoned. During the month of May, Curély was seized with a violent attack of rheumatism which the energetic treatment of Angebaud could not cure. "For two days, Major Curély was in great pain. Only a very small number of leeches were to be found, hence it was necessary to cut off the end of their tails to make them bleed longer. In the snow waters of that section of the country, there were no leeches."

Informed of Curély's condition, General Garreau, who, himself had departed for treatment at Vernet, ordered him to report there. "He had the kindness to have a room prepared for me, and a bed, in offering me his table, which I accepted."

After 25 days of a treatment which caused him much suffering, Curély felt sufficiently recovered to rejoin his troop in front of Figuières, which was blockaded by the French army under the command of Marshal de Tarente.

The troop remained there engaged in nothing of interest until the surrender of the place on September 30th.

The state of health of the men was very bad; an epidemic of dysentery had broken out among the Chasseurs, "they all fell sick, one after the other; sometimes I had as many as 60 on sick report at once. I undertook to care for them myself. I could not send them to the hospital where they would have lain on straw and crowded together, very poorly fed; still more poorly cared for; and from whence upon leaving, they would have been evacuated to France at such a rate that I should have soon found myself with 200 horses and not a single man. Here is how I set about it: As soon as the sickness manifested itself, I prescribed a purge of jalap; then I made them take lots of quinine in wine; then I made them drink as much wine as possible. By this means I succeeded in retaining all my men excepting those who never recovered." And to think that in similar cases our medicos run the gamut of the dispensatory!

From October 1st to January 10, 1812, the troop was engaged only in police duty and in requisitioning supplies. Then placed under the orders of General La Hamelinaye, it formed part of the force sent to relieve the garrison of Tarragone, which the Spaniards were investing closely on land while the English were bombarding by sea. It was under the walls of Barcelona, January 21st, that the concentration of these troops took place. The Barcelona garrison had started marching one day in advance in order to give the enemy, ten thousand strong, the impression that it had a decided superiority. The Spaniards had marched to meet them and took up a very favorable position before Altafula. But before daylight on the 24th, General Lamarque's division arrived and at once attacked. Curély's troop, to which was attached a troop of the 29th Chasseurs, all under his orders, was on the extreme right, awaiting the chance to intervene.

"We had not yet seen the Spanish Cavalry," relates Angebaud, "when suddenly, while we were in a hollow, we saw it on the right, marching along the crest above us. We crossed over a bridge which was on the verge of collapsing and formed by platoons. The squadron commander gave the commands: Draw SABER. TROT. Then the trumpeters sounded the charge and the gallop was taken up. They made a good showing, presenting us a strong line composed of dragoons, chasseurs, and cuirassiers. A colored trumpeter named Pinel was riding an unusually fearless horse and the first adversary he encountered he knocked over by a saber cut. The Spaniards fired a few pistol shots, and made an about face. We rushed upon them.

"There was a village behind them and we set upon them in a narrow street, where they are milling about and running over one another. Major Curély who boldly closed with the enemy, was an expert with the saber and made several Spanish Cavalrymen bite the dust. He had the top of his shako split by a saber blow dealt him by an officer whom he soon brought down by a skilful

thrust. Major Curély's orderly, named Tondeur, sabered a Cuirassier officer, taking from him his helmet, the whole top part and throat latches of which were of heavy silver. This netted him later 300 pesetas."

Upon learning the details of this affair, General Lamarque addressed the troop and expressed to Major Curély his great satisfaction "at the timely measures he had taken and at the courage he had displayed in such a vigorous charge so skilfully led."

In submitting to the Minister of War his report on this affair, General Decaen then commanding the Army of Catalonia, having succeeded the Duke of Tarente, praised Curély's conduct very highly, and . . . submitted his name recommending him for the Cross of the Legion of Honor, which he already had held since 1806.

In the higher bureaus this fact was caught and his name was simply erased from the list! That is how, for the second time, Curély lost his chance of receiving the rosette of officer,<sup>2</sup> which he was never destined to get. Curély's troop remained attached to Lamarque's division until the 20th of March when it received orders to proceed to the regiment's depot at Bonn on the Rhine, and after re-equipping there, to start out again for the purpose of joining the Army of Russia.

The Chasseurs received this news with joy. "The soldiers hoped to be better off up there than they were here, as is always the case when the question of a change of station arises. I did not want to spoil their hopes by painting Russia as she really is, as I was already familiar with part of it and it was easy to foresee that a mass of 500,000 men would not have all the comforts and consideration which my men were visualizing, based solely on their experience in Germany."

At Gironne, where the troop of the 20th Chasseurs was to leave the Army of Catalonia, the officers of the 29th Chasseurs gave a farewell banquet to their comrades of the 20th: "Some excellent Spanish wine as well as Bordeaux was drunk and greatly enjoyed." On the following day, March 23d, Curély's troop departed for France.

\* \* \*

For the march of 360 leagues (about 900 miles) to Bonn, Curély had divided his itinerary into 63 stages and provided for rests at Narbonne, Montpellier, Pont-Saint-Esprit, Valence, Lyon, Chalon-sur-Saône, Langres, Neufchâteau, Metz, Treves, and Polch—eleven in all.

If Angebaud acknowledges his delight with his new trip across France, describing with enthusiasm the country and cities passed through, praising especially the culinary resources of each (a matter in which he was qualified judge), Curély, on the other hand, is very dissatisfied. He complains bitterly of the difficulties constantly confronting him in subsisting his command, especially the horses. Depots were 75% depleted and the inhabitants were tired of having to supply troops with food and forage, payment for which was always delayed, so they

employed every manner of fraud in regards both quantity and quality.

This attitude and these practices exasperated Curély who reported the matter to the Minister of War and asked redress. The Minister merely blamed Curély for being so severe and exacting. The old soldier could not understand this at all: "Troops travelling in France could not demand what was justly due them without their commanding officer being blamed by the Minister, and yet the Emperor would have relieved and stripped of his rank, any commanding officer failing in his duty of having his troops supplied as authorized by law."

At least, he had the consolation of the gratitude of his men. "The Chasseurs regarded me as their father and benefactor and yet I was only doing my duty. Since my coming to the regiment they had recognized on many occasions, my justness and to the extent that, in spite of the severity with which I used to punish them for serious offenses, they would have sacrificed their lives for me. Consequently, they were always content to follow me wherever I wished to lead them."

At last Bonn was reached and the troop made its entry in grand style. The officers leading the Chasseurs comprising the depot came out to meet the new arrivals a few miles from the city. That same night and in honor of the new arrivals, a grand dinner was given to which Angebaud was invited. He was all the more pleased because he made quite a hit in that "they decided to stage a drinking bout and my goat's skin of wine, the only one remaining at the end of our journey, was too much for the officers who had never been in Spain. The wines we drank seemed very mild in comparison with those of Spain and of some of the good wine districts of France we had passed through."

Arrived at Bonn on May 21st, Curély had to set out again on the 29th. Those eight days were spent in overhauling equipment and saddlery, replenishing funds and in replacing a few worn-out horses.

On June 5th, he arrived at Mayence where Marshal Kellermann was organizing the combat regiments which, under field officers, were to be led into Russia.

Curély received 22 detachments from different cavalry regiments which, together with his own troop, formed a provisional regiment of 525 men.

On the 26th he was at Berlin where a few late detachments joined him. He left Berlin July 1st; was at Tilsitt the 28th; and took his place in the combat echelon of the 20th Chasseurs at Polosk August 21st. In the 144 elapsed days since his departure from Gironne he had covered more than 860 leagues (about 2,100 miles) losing only five horses en route. Truly a remarkable feat, especially when one considers all the difficulties which he had to surmount in supplying his command throughout the march across Germany where the Army of the Emperor had exhausted all resources of food and forage. All the detachments forming his provisional regiment had left him August 16th, at Glubokoé, to go to Smolensk in order to join the main body of the Grand Army.

<sup>2</sup>Second grade in the hierarchy of the Legion of Honor.

The 20th Chasseurs, together with the 7th, commanded by Colonel de Saint-Chamans, and the 8th Polish Lancers under Colonel Lubinski, constituted Corbineau's brigade.

This brigade, attached once more to Marshal Oudinot's Corps, remained as flank guard on the Dwina, facing the troops of Wittgenstein. The Duke de Reggio, wounded a few days before, had just been superseded by Marshal Gouvion-Saint-Cyr.

Colonel de Lagrange commanded the regiment. The condition of the regiment contrasted markedly with that of the troop Curély had brought with him: "nearly all the horses needed shoeing; clothing and equipment were shabby. I begged the colonel to have the horses shod and he replied that he did not have any shoes. I said to him: 'Give me the horseshoers and tomorrow you will have shoes and nails.' In fact, I went to the city of Polosk where I found iron, forges and coal and in less than four days all the horses in the regiment were shod." Moreover, Colonel de Lagrange, who, for several months, had been badly in need of rest, took advantage of Curély's arrival to ask for a short leave and left the front, turning the command over to Curély.

Corbineau's brigade had a black page of its record to wipe out. A few days prior to Curély's arrival it had been seized with panic in the battle of Polosk and had fled before the Russian Cavalry.

Now one day when Curély with a few Chasseurs was passing by a regiment of infantry, he heard a doughboy cry out jeeringly: "There are the ones who run so well!" "My friends," Curély replied, "I was not there." But this incident affected him very much and he swore he would restore the honor of the regiment at the first opportunity.

Unfortunately, for the time being, all they did was to go from one bivouac to another, seeking food and forage. Thanks to the initiative and activity of their leader the 20th Chasseurs suffered less than other outfits. Curély had his troopers cut rye which they then threshed by beating. The straw was fed to the horses and the grain, ground in a hand mill he had acquired somewhere, was made into bread by regimental bakers. If not very tasty, it was at least sufficient to appease hunger. "As for meat, there was always some, since there were plenty of cattle in the country." Thanks to the constant care he exercised over the welfare of his men he was able to maintain his regiment in good shape although "bivouacs were still worse for the horses than for the men."

On October 16th, the brigade was ordered to break camp and fall back on the camp at Polosk, for the enemy, resuming the offensive on the Dwina, seemed about to attack frontally and at the same time envelop a flank by going up the left bank of the Dwina. It was on this date that the Emperor was forced to abandon Moscow in flames, and order a general retreat. The situation of the Grand Army was not long in becoming tragic.

On October 18th, while the main body of Corbineau's brigade was on reconnaissance, Curély with a troop from

each regiment, received the mission of cooperating in the defense of the camp which Wittgenstein attacked furiously.

This new battle of Polosk, fought with great fierceness on both sides, lasted two whole days. From the very beginning of the action, Curély, in a splendid manner, restored the reputation of the 20th Chasseurs.

At the head of a hundred Chasseurs, his veterans from Spain, he had captured 24 guns from the enemy and made a prisoner of Wittgenstein himself who, unfortunately, succeeded in escaping in the course of a counter offensive staged by the Russian cavalry, one thousand strong. Curély repulsed this large force by a second charge no less vigorous than the first.

The story of this episode is found in the memoirs of Marshal Gouvion-Saint-Cyr who adds: "the conduct of these troops merits the highest praise for every charge which they made or withstood, against numbers so disproportionate to theirs."

Although the Russian Army had been stopped everywhere, Marshal Gouvion-Saint-Cyr, wounded, had nevertheless, to order the retreat because of the threat developing on his left.

In the evening of October 19th, the French army recrossed the Dwina at Polosk by means of a pontoon bridge. But on the 20th, beginning at 5 AM, it found itself threatened by the Russian corps which had moved up the left bank of the river. Curély with his Chasseurs were constantly charging and sabering, checking the enemy and taking prisoners. In the afternoon of the same day, he rejoined his regiment of which Colonel de Lagrange had resumed command.

"I was acclaimed, embraced and almost knocked down by those wishing to congratulate me," he said; "When I arrived at Polosk from Spain, I found that my reputation had preceded me. Some believed it, others amongst the high ranking officers, said it was easy to make a reputation in a little army such as the one in Spain. These skeptics now came to offer me their congratulations."

Corbineau, who from then on had placed full confidence in Curély, charged him with the responsibility of the rear guard and this again offered him opportunities for brilliant combats.

Placed provisionally at the disposition of the Bavarian Corps of General de Wrede, Corbineau's brigade found itself moving in a direction away from Wilna. Having been ordered to rejoin the II Corps, it took the route to Borisow and arrived there only to find the Russians violently attacking the Polish corps placed there to defend the bridge over the Beresina. Corbineau thought of again falling back on the Bavarian corps, but this time Curély was in the advance guard. "We have lost enough time around here while we might have been accomplishing something useful elsewhere. With 800 sabers we can go anywhere. Let's rejoin the Emperor and if it is necessary, let's pass right through the belly of the enemy at Borisow. I'll open the way with my hundred Chasseurs." The march forward was resumed but the Russians had



just seized Borisow with large forces and the Poles were retiring on the road to Mohilew. At nightfall it was necessary to locate a ford for recrossing the Beresina and Curély found one at Studianka. The following day Corbineau's brigade met up with the troops of the II Corps.

At daybreak, November 23d, Oudinot's Corps resumed its march on Borisow for the purpose of driving out the Russians and retaking the bridge which the enemy, although repulsed, had had time to set afire. The situation of the French troops, pursued and almost surrounded, would have been truly tragic if the Emperor had not been informed by General Corbineau of the existence of the ford which Curély had located two days previously. And it was the celebrated work of Eblé's pontoniers that made it possible for the army to take the road to Wilna.

During the day of the 27th, Corbineau presented Curély to Marshal Oudinot who promised to obtain for him, a colonelcy from the Emperor. But this promotion had to be waited for until August 9, 1813. And it is always with the same philosophy, a bit skeptical, that he records that "a short time afterwards, General Corbineau was promoted to command a division and aide-de-camp to the Emperor for having crossed the Beresina at 10 o'clock at night on November 21, 1812. Thus, I had fought valiantly at Polosk; I had persuaded General Corbineau to cross the Beresina with his brigade; it was this passage which the Emperor learned about from Corbineau that persuaded his Majesty to have the bridges built at Studianka; and had the ford not been known of, the Emperor and the Army would have run a grave risk of being made prisoners. And, yet, I was obliged to await a more favorable occasion to be promoted to colonel . . .!"

After the passage of the Beresina, came the sad and trying retreat under the harassment of the Cossacks and in unbearably cold weather. The 20th Chasseurs formed the rear guard as far as Wilna. After Wilna, it was almost a stampede with everyone selfishly looking out for himself. Colonel de Lagrange procured a sleigh and starts out ahead, again leaving the command of the regiment to Curély. The latter had only one idea—to march rapidly in order to gain distance and "get a little elbow room." "I marched with my hundred men without regard to route, having gotten more than a 24 hour start on the army. I took care to have my men and horses well fed without bothering the inhabitants with whom we were billeted."

On January 1, 1813, he arrived at Culm; and on the 27th he was at the Elbe River where, a few at a time, the stragglers and the cripples rejoined. He at once set about reconstituting a fighting unit. He was able to gather together 200 mounts and organized his force into two troops, retaining command for himself. Thus he remained with the Army instead of going to the regimental depot at Bonn.

At Bonn new troops were rapidly formed to reconstitute the regiment. "There were already at the depot," says Angebaud, "600 conscripts, nearly all of whom

were from the Rohr Department, and an equal number of horses. We drilled every day—mounted in the morning and dismounted in the afternoon. We did this for a month and it may be truthfully said that until the day of our departure we had no rest—neither day nor night."

Early in April, a detachment of 300 men was sent to join Curély's troops which had just been put under the command of General Sébastiani whose corps (about 18,000 strong) comprised the sole remnants of the French troops which had participated in the Russian campaign.

Curély did not take part in either the battle of Lutzen or the battle of Bautzen where Sébastiani's corps, forming the extreme left of the French Army, was not engaged. When the armistice of Plesswitz was signed, June 4th, the 20th Chasseurs were in cantonments near Glogau where they remained for two months. Curély used this enforced leisure in resuming the training of the regiment of which he still retained command. "During the armistice I occupied my time in instructing my Chasseurs, half of whom were youngsters just from the recruit depot, in handling their arms, both mounted and dismounted. I made them run at heads, jump ditches, execute individually drill movements at speed in order to give them skill and confidence in controlling their horses with sabers drawn. Then I made them maneuver in groups in order to perfect them as soon as possible to act as a single unit." "It would be difficult," Angebaud assures us, "to give an idea of the progress which our youngsters made; it was a very fine sight to see the regiment maneuver under the orders of a leader such as Major Curély."

When hostilities began again, the 20th Chasseurs certainly was one of the best trained regiments in the army and its commander promised himself to do great things at its head. But it was at this moment that he received his promotion as Colonel of the 10th Hussars the very day the 20th Chasseurs were celebrating 'Saint Napoleon.'<sup>18</sup>

On the 17th of August, Curély left his Chasseurs and joined the 10th Hussars at Liegnitz the same day. This fine regiment, returned from Spain, had a strength of 1,200 mounts and was part of Beurmann's brigade which was again attached to Marshal Ney's Corps. Before the attack by Blücher who was confronting him, Ney wished to withdraw to a more favorable position and Beurmann's brigade was given the mission of covering this movement. On this occasion a squadron of the 10th Hussars had to make a charge under the direct leadership of Curély and in the pursuit which followed, was completely surrounded by a large number of Cossacks. Wounded by a lance blow, Curély fell to the ground and would have been made prisoner, had not a detachment of the 10th Hussars returned to rescue their colonel. Although wounded, Curély refused to be evacuated and less than a week later, while his wound was still unhealed, he resumed command of the regiment. At the unfortunate affair at la Kalsbach his vigorous intervention permitted the escape

<sup>18</sup>The Emperor's birthday.

from capture, of a part of the artillery of Ney's corps. But his wound had reopened and it was necessary for him to absent himself from his troops for a few days. He came back in time to execute at Dessau on October 12th, a brilliant charge by which more than 450 prisoners were captured. Throughout the battle of Leipsic the 10th Hussars were in reserve and were not put into action. The retreat began on October 20th. The regiment marching by way of Frankfort and Weilbach, reached the Rhine and crossed at Mayence to go into cantonment on the left bank at Gemersheim. Curély had brought back 600 mounted men. "I was the only colonel," he says, "who had conserved a regiment of that strength."

On the Rhine, between Gemersheim and Mannheim, he was charged with observing enemy movements on the right bank. With the supplies furnished by the depot of Metz, he employed himself in reconstituting and completely reëquipping his regiment. An epidemic of typhus which was prevalent in the French Army, broke out among his men. As upon the former occasion in Catalona, he assumed the rôle of surgeon and again prescribed the diet of a daily bottle of wine which had been so effective once before. "It was carried out to the letter because I saw to it personally. Nearly all my Hussars were affected and yet I did not lose one; the majority of them were well before the 1st of January, 1814."

On that date the enemy began to cross the Rhine and the French army had to begin its withdrawal. Curély was assigned to the rear guard which he never left until Nogent-sur-Seine was reached. Under the command of General Ricquet, the 10th Hussars and a regiment from the guard of honor, formed a brigade. In the army of the Duke of Raguse, of which the brigade formed part, defeatist rumors were already spreading. The arrival of the Austrians in Paris in the near future was held certain; the Midi (southern France) had declared itself in favor of Louis XVIII; the Vendée had taken up arms; and the Emperor was thinking of abdicating. One day a general talking with Curély, asks him if, under these conditions, he will persist in following the ill fortunes of a man who was going to be abandoned by the few remaining troops. "General," he replied, "mad or not, I shall follow Napoleon in his reverses just as I have in his successes."

During this painful retreat he was repeatedly striking telling blows at the enemy in bloody encounters. At Manhuelles, near his native land, on January 20th, he administered a severe and costly check to the opposing cavalry, and again on the 31st he especially distinguished himself in the battle of the Rothière.

The following day he received from the Emperor in person the orders to cover the march on Troyes: "Colonel, you are to scout my march on Troyes and you will sweep aside all opposition you may encounter." Having passed through Troyes, he was sent with his regiment and two guns to relieve the troops guarding the bridge of la Guillotière. The Austrians attacked him; he charged and repulsed them. On the 7th of February he was at Méry-sur-Seine and on the 8th in the outskirts of Nogent.

Then he set out again for Sézanne where he arrived during the day of the 9th after having marched all night and part of the day without a stop, in order to take part in the battle of Montmirail the 11th. The division comprising General Defranc's Guards of Honor, and of which the 10th Hussars were still a part, took up the pursuit toward Château-Thierry. "Upon arrival within canon shot range of the enemy I had orders to attack the whole line with my regiment, the Guards of Honor remaining in observation. Since I was engaged with a hostile force of some thirty troops to my five, I thought I had better attack from the left flank which I did, hurling the left of the line back on the center. By this move I drew down on me the whole of the Russian Cavalry and the Emperor took advantage of the situation to attack the right with his Guard which broke through, carrying everything before it." That same evening, Curély was notified by Marshal Ney that the Emperor had promoted him to Brigadier General, but he retained command of the 10th Hussars until the arrival of his successor and hence took part in the affairs at Soissons. His successor, Colonel Bos, arrived March 1st and Curély joined the Emperor's headquarters at Berry-au-Bac. First he received command of a brigade of Spanish Dragoons, forming part of Roussel d'Hurbal's division and with which he fights for two days in front of Laon where the Emperor was unable to dislodge the enemy. Then he was charged with forming at Compiègne "the composite brigade." This brigade was to be formed from detachments furnished by nine different regiments—Chasseurs, Cuirassiers, Carbineers, and Dragoons. Once formed, the brigade was expanded into a "composite division" and placed under the command of General de Berckheim. Curély commanded the brigade of light cavalry and General Mourier the brigade of heavy cavalry. With these improvised units, scarcely amalgamated, Curély still found means of covering himself with glory at the battle of d'Arcis-sur-Aube. His record of service shows: "On March 21, 1814, near d'Arcis-sur-Aube, the brigade under the command of General Curély, rescued with the greatest success the grenadiers and mounted chasseurs of the Imperial Guard who were surrounded and subjected to the charges of superior forces."

That was his last feat of arms in the campaign of France. Placed on the "waiting for assignment" list when the division was disbanded upon the arrival of the king, Curély retired first to Nantes, where he found his poor wife who had not seen him for nearly three years and living in constant anxiety. Then feeling that doubtless his military life had been fulfilled, he resolved to return to Lorraine and went first to establish himself provisionally near Thiaucourt in an old convent which formerly had belonged to one of his parents. Some time later, March 1, 1815, he acquired the château of Jaulny on the valley of the Rupt de Mad. The property consisted of the château with terrace, gardens and courtyard adjoining, a small vineyard below the terrace and three parcels of land. The contract of sale was accomplished before Master

Antoine, a notary of Thiaucourt, and specified the sum of 12,000 francs.

Hardly had he installed himself at Jaulny when it was learned in France that the Emperor had left the island of Elba and had landed in France. On March 20th Napoleon made his entry into Paris. Curély at once placed himself at the disposition of the Minister of War and on April 29th received command of a brigade of Dragoons of Jacquinet's division assembled in the region of Saint-Avoid. He remains there only a very short time because the division was soon disbanded and its regiment divided amongst the different corps. He himself received orders June 6th to report to the Emperor's headquarters at Laon, but when he arrived there the 13th, headquarters had already left and he did not succeed in overtaking it until the 17th, on the eve of the battle of Waterloo. On the morning of the 18th, Marshal Ney presented him to the Emperor, saying, "Sire, here is the kind of a man you will need in your Guard." "Put him there tomorrow," replies Napoleon simply. Chance did not will that he wait until the next day. During the entire battle Curély carried orders from Ney to the different corps. Once during the day his mission brought him close to the light brigade of the Guard, commanded by Lefebvre-Desnoettes.

Brack was a captain in the Light Horse Lancers, one of the two regiments of the brigade. Curély was aware of this and wished to go see him.

"General Curély," relates Brack, "had been with me, a captain aide-de-camp of General Edward Colbert, our former colonel. We loved each other like brothers. Without a command that day, and while attached to G.H.Q. awaiting to be entrusted with one, he saw the regiment in the distance and came to see me. There I embraced him and while chatting with him, climbing to the crest of a nearby rise a few feet from the extreme right of the regiment."

Brack, who knew so well the terrain in front of him occupied by the English, on account of having held it himself in 1814 while covering Brussels, explained with many gestures to Curély how he conceived the maneuver to dislodge them. "From the front of the regiment some officers push forward to join our group. The ranks on the right follow them, and the movement is taken up by the troops to reestablish the alignment and finally extends throughout the Chasseurs. What is only a few steps on the right is a much more pronounced movement on the left. The brigade of Dragoons and Grenadiers who are waiting for the order to charge at any moment thinks it has come. It starts out and we follow!" If one is to believe Brack, this is the cause of those famous charges launched by the Guard which five times struck the English squares. However that may be, Curély felt he could not afford to pass up such a beautiful opportunity for a fight. He returned to Ney only after having taken part in the first charge of the Light Horse Lancers in the midst of the debris of the Guard.

When, at nightfall, he was sent by the Emperor to take command of a brigade of Chasseurs which had just lost its

commander, he discovers that the brigade no longer exists and finds himself drawn into the frightful *pêle mêle* of the retreat. He found Brack again marching at the head of a few platoons and hiked along beside him in the darkness of the night.

"Suddenly: 'There's the Emperor!' cries Brack. At once our looks are directed to the road and in the midst of a mass of infantry, cavalry, vehicles and wounded, we truly see the Emperor on horseback, accompanied by two officers in long coats such as his and followed by four or five gendarmes. I believe it is about one o'clock in the morning. Recognizing some organized troops, the Emperor rides toward us.

"Never did a more brilliant moon light up such an awful night. The light from that moon shines full on the countenance of the Emperor who is facing our ranks. Never, even in the retreat from Moscow, did I see on that august face a sadder or more worried expression."

While falling back on Avesnes, Curély made every effort to gather together a few elements of his brigade and succeeded in uniting about 200 men. With these and by order of Prince Jerome, who has taken command temporarily of the troops, he had to reconnoiter the route to Maubeuge. By way of Aubenton, Signy-le-Grand and Neufchâtel-sur-Aisne, he arrives, the 25th, at Soissons where he left the few Chasseurs who were with him, in order to take command of two regiments of Cuirassiers almost reorganized. They marched on Compiègne but the enemy was already there and it was necessary to escape through the forests in order to reach Senlis! Finally, with his brigade, Curély reached Paris. But the enemy was already appearing before the capital. A convention was at once concluded and put an end to the pursuit. The French army was in motion the 6th of July and withdrew beyond the Loire.

Curély was ordered to Poitiers with one of his two regiments of Cuirassiers. Learning that Marshal Macdonald, who had replaced Marshal Davout in command of the Army, had sent each general officer some special orders, he was surprised at not having received any so he took himself to headquarters at Bourges where he received confirmation of his appointment and furthermore was made provisional Inspector of Cavalry.

It was indeed a provisional appointment because on October 22d he received the following notification:

"I regret to inform you that in pursuance to orders of the Minister of War, dated the 18th of this month, your duties as provisional Inspector of Cavalry are terminated, as well as those pertaining to service under me and you are authorized to return at once to your home. You will inform His Excellency of the place you select for the establishment of your domicile, and will notify him of the date of your arrival thereat in order that he may transmit to you such orders as the government may see fit to give you and arrange for your pay. I request you turn over all papers pertaining to your inspection to the general officer or field officer commanding the department in



which you are stationed for their transmission to the new Inspector who is to relieve you.

"Please accept—

MARSHAL, DUKE OF TARENTE.

Commander in Chief of the French Troops  
beyond the line of demarcation.

Signed: MACDONALD."

From the above document it must be admitted that at least a general officer of the type of Curély cannot be kicked out the door without going through certain formalities!

On November 1, 1815, Curély returned to Jaulny!

\* \* \*

Thus, after 22 years of service, 20 campaigns, 6 wounds, brigadier general at 40 years of age, Curély, whose whole life had been dedicated to his military duties, found himself again on his native soil of Lorraine, separated, momentarily he thought, from the army he had served so gloriously.

Unable to resign himself to the enforced idleness which this situation of awaiting orders soon transformed into "inactive service" was imposing upon him, he energetically set about organizing the exploitation of his property to which he had added, little by little, a few additions.

Thanks to the example which he insisted upon setting personally for the peasants of the neighborhood, he was not long in establishing in that heretofore rather run-down region, agricultural methods which enriched it.

At the same time he devoted himself wholeheartedly to the education of his children, supervising the lessons which the teacher he had selected, gave them. He himself taught them riding and fencing. "I have just bought a horse to ride myself, and to teach the youngsters riding, which I hope will keep us busy."

However, when in 1817, Marshal Gouvion-Saint-Cyr became Minister of War, Curély thought the moment opportune to remind his former commander that he had served under him at Polosk, asking him to please put him on active duty to fill the first available vacancy.

The Minister's reply was evasive. In spite of everything, the old Cavalryman who could not believe such ingratitude existed, kept up his hopes for a long time. So when the abrupt order placing him definitely on the retired list came after eight years, the blow was all the more terrible for him since he felt it was an injustice.

No doubt the need for thinning out the overcrowded higher cadres required certain measures be taken but the board of ministers pretended that they had made up the retired list of general officers by placing thereon: "the oldest, the least active, those who had not requested service since 1815, and finally those whose opposition to the government was flagrant."

Curély could not be classified under any of these headings and no one could dispute this fact.

This iniquitous order was destined to kill him.

Two years later, November 19, 1827, he collapsed from a congestion of the brain and died in a few hours, leaving his courageous wife who was to survive him a long time, and his children, richer in honor and in glory than in fortune.<sup>4</sup>

His body lies in the little cemetery of the village of Jaulny.

His name, inscribed on the Arc de Triomphe at the Etoile, still lives in our African cavalry.

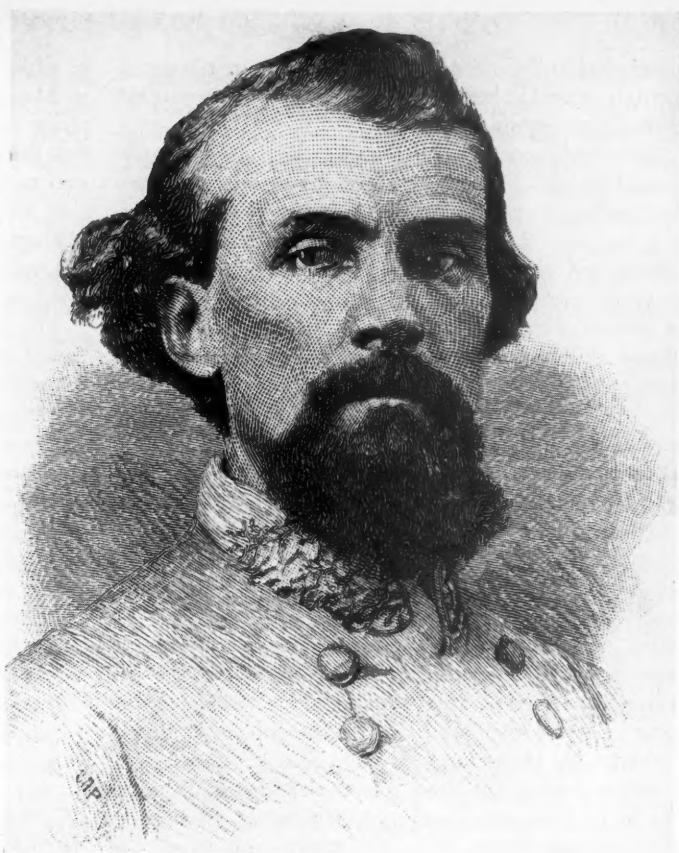
And his memory is in the heart of all Cavalrymen of France.

<sup>4</sup>"Curély left his children his name only; it is a heavy load to carry but it is an entire fortune." (De Brack.)

(Translated by Lieutenant Colonel Geoffrey Keyes, Cavalry)

*"Happy is the army in which acts of rashness are of frequent occurrence. They are luxuriant plants which grow only on a fertile soil."*—GENERAL GOUGH.

Lieutenant General Nathan Bedford Forrest,  
C.S.A.



By Colonel Allen J. Greer,  
Field Artillery

## FORREST: Natural Fighting Leader of Fighting Men

ANECDOTES frequently repeated are very apt to become accepted as facts, although the incidents originally were very much colored in the telling, and many features exaggerated. Thus from stories concerning him, there is very little doubt but that the popular impression of Nathan Bedford Forrest, Lieutenant General, Confederate States of America, is that of a crude, uneducated, and utterly ungrammatical backwoodsman, whose claim to greatness rested only on his natural abilities as a soldier and a fighter.

Time and again the story is told when Forrest was asked what rule he followed in his campaigns, he replied: "To git thar fustest with the mostest men." Also there is another story that when one of his subordinates, being pressed by the enemy, asked Forrest what he should do. To this Forrest is alleged to have replied with a note of a single word only: "Fitum."

The first story minus its distorted and ungrammatical expressions probably owes its origin to a passage in Taylor's *Destruction and Reconstruction*, an able, but almost forgotten book, written by Lieutenant General Richard

Taylor, C.S.A., a son of President Zachary Taylor, and for some time Forrest's superior as department commander of the southwestern Confederate States. General Taylor says: "Asked after the war to what he (Forrest) attributed his success in so many actions, he replied: 'Well, I got there first with the most men.'" General Taylor knew Forrest intimately and was his warm friend, admirer and staunch supporter.

The second story is almost certainly a purely post-war fabrication, and so far as known, is not mentioned by any of Forrest's biographers who had personal contacts with him.

It is not unusual, in the case of prominent but rather uneducated persons, for stories to originate, magnifying their lack of learning and ascribing crudities which are quite far from being true. Such is the case of Andrew Jackson. He obtained his education in an "old field school," and it consisted of little more than the "three R's." He never quite learned to write English correctly, yet in addition to his military achievements, he served in Congress, in the Senate, on the Supreme Court of Ten-

nessee, and as President. Although lacking in any statesmanship training, he was the outstanding American between Washington and Lincoln.

Anecdotes concerning Jackson, which have largely formed the public's estimate of him, show him crude and disregarding convention. Sometimes he did this for effect, but usually, and especially with women, he had a courtly and chivalrous manner, and although at times given to very plain—even profane—language, he could on occasion be eloquent and clear spoken in what he did or said. He had two sets of manners, one where he dealt with men and the problems of war and politics, the other for the drawing room where he met ladies and conformed to the etiquette of society.

Abraham Lincoln was often ridiculed in the early days of his presidency for his unpolished and unconventional manners, and many stories were circulated grossly emphasizing these characteristics. Yet Woldman says in his *Lawyer Lincoln*: "They remembered the unpolished rustic, with less than one year of actual schooling . . . amid such surroundings as ordinarily crush every aspiration to mental achievement—and yet they saw the day arrive when men of deep learning and statesmen of vast experience eagerly listened to his counsel and willingly followed his leadership." Lincoln trained himself, and "became one of the most gifted pleaders of all ages." Today his Gettysburg address remains probably the most eloquent speech ever made in America, and a model of perfect use of the English language.

Nathan Bedford Forrest was born in 1821. His family was of the poorer type of frontier settlers. He attended school for a short time only, and was not a student, being interested in other things than books. He started trading in Hernando, Mississippi, and shortly afterwards took to dealing in slaves, and had an interest in a brickyard. His business affairs prospered, and he moved to Memphis, where he owned a slave market and had other business interests which were quite successful, and he accumulated a moderate fortune. He was chosen as an alderman in Memphis, and served as such for several years. He then acquired a plantation in Mississippi, not very far south of Memphis, and became a cotton planter on a large scale, and at the outbreak of the Civil War was quite a wealthy man. Even after the war he was still a man of means.

Largely self-trained, as was Lincoln, Forrest's biographer Wyeth says: "Despite the lack of a school education, Forrest's contact with business men and constant reading of newspapers (for he kept himself thoroughly versed in the records of the day) gave him an excellent idea of the use of words and the construction of phrases." Referring to some of Forrest's peculiarities Wyeth also adds: "After Forrest became famous these idiosyncracies were repeated and exaggerated until the idea prevailed in the minds of many that he was more awkward and boorish in his speech as well as manner than he really was." Wyeth says of his proclamation after his celebrated victory at Brice's Cross-Roads: "General Forrest was remarkable for his ready command of language. This address, as well

as all of his reports and addresses, was dictated by him to Major Charles W. Anderson, or some other member of his staff. Major Anderson states that often after the first draft of a report or address was made it would be read over to the general who, although a man of limited education, would not only quickly detect a grammatical error, but would criticize and correct a phrase improperly constructed. His usual remark was 'That hasn't got the right pitch.'"

The address mentioned, while rather flowery and oratorical, was well expressed and calculated to appeal to the soldiers whom Forrest thoroughly knew and understood. Wyeth also says: "He was moreover a born orator, possessed a wonderful command of language, and was eloquent and impressive in delivery."

His lack of education, it is true, caused him to make many mistakes in spelling, for as Major Anderson said: "his spelling, like his fighting was the shortest way to the end," and he was governed by the sound rather than rules of orthography. His clear perception and analytical mind is revealed by his remarks in a conversation after the battle of Nashville: "To my mind it is evident that the end is not far off; it will only be a question of time as to when General Lee's lines at Petersburg will be broken, for Grant is wearing him out; with unlimited resources of men and money, he must ultimately force Lee to leave Virginia or surrender. Lee's army will never leave Virginia; they will not follow him out when the time comes, and that will end the War." What a pity that the other Southern soldiers and statesmen did not have the same true conception of the situation!

The author of this article was born in Memphis the year after Forrest died there. He was brought up in this community which considered Forrest their great local hero. Among his classmates in a military preparatory school were a grandson and a nephew of General Forrest. He knew a number of people who had known Forrest intimately, and many officers and soldiers who had served under him. Among these was a first cousin of the writer's father, who as a colonel commanded one of Forrest's regiments. He heard a number of stories in his youth concerning Forrest and his deeds. Some of them no doubt were touched up to illustrate the points, and some contained references to Forrest's quaint, rather than ungrammatical use of the English language.

The writer's father, as an ex-Confederate soldier of the Virginia Military Institute's Corps of Cadets, and a protégé of Mr. Jefferson Davis, then a resident of Memphis, knew General Forrest fairly well and had a number of personal contacts with him. As a young lawyer in Memphis, he represented a client in a law-suit against Forrest, during which he had several personal conferences with the General. Recently he told the writer that General Forrest during these conferences spoke just as any other well informed business man would speak, that is in well phrased and correct English. He added that a possible reason for the stories attributing an outrageous disregard of grammar to General Forrest was the common Southern



habit of dropping into the local vernacular to illustrate more vividly the point in a story. This is a well established custom, and frequently an imitation of negro dialect and expressions is used. In explanation of this he called attention to the case of the inimitable Will Rogers, the foremost of American modern humorists. Both of Rogers' parents were fairly well to do, and he attended high school and the Kemper Military Academy in Missouri, although he did not graduate from either. He travelled all over the world, was a newspaper correspondent, and had contacts with many prominent men. A biographer says of him: "He was not a literary scholar, but was quite capable of using correct and honest English." His famous introductory line: "All I know is what I see in the papers," and because he elected to express himself in ungrammatical English caused many to believe he had been without formal schooling. Perhaps like Will Rogers, Forrest found he could illustrate a subject much more effectively by colloquial, if not correct English.

Forrest's career, to those of us who believe that the day of horsed cavalry is not ended, offers a field of study that should not be neglected by any officer in the mounted service. Students of the Civil War are too apt to have their attention diverted to Virginia and the northeastern sector of the theater of war. Yet it was in the southwest and in Georgia that the war was really decided and secession crushed. Lee's campaigns and their brilliancy have shoved into the background the vital operations in Tennessee, and the glamour that has surrounded Stuart's cavalry has caused Forrest's much more efficient operations to be neglected.

Forrest took his instrument as he found it. He was not an idealist, but an intense realist, looking at facts as they actually were. His men were nearly all acquainted with horses and riding, and almost without exception accustomed to the use of firearms—rifles, shotguns, and pistols. Few of them knew anything about sabers. Therefore, he used his horses as a means of transportation, and fought his command on foot, depending on fire power and not shock action for results. In the instances when mounted action occurred, it was the pistol, not the saber that was the deciding weapon.

His prestige with his men was almost without limit, for his continual successes made them confident that anything he undertook would not fail. In addition to this he never asked any man to do anything that he personally was not willing to do, and he shared with the common soldier all perils and hardships. He was not only a leader, but a fighting man himself. He actually killed or disabled in personal combat thirty of the enemy; was wounded a number of times, and on several occasions had horses shot under him. He supervised all arrangements preliminary to the combat, but when contact with the enemy was close, he courageously and joyously joined in the fray, and with his utter fearlessness, his exceptional skill as a horseman, and great strength, was a host in himself. His words of command as he led the charge were unique: "Forward men and mix with 'em."

War to him was the most serious of all businesses, and unlike Stuart, who was full of the joy of living and delighted in music and the lighter side of life, Forrest had but one purpose, the defeat and destruction of the enemy. His raids always had a definite object, and the difficulties they caused the Union forces are more than shown in Grant's and Sherman's dispatches. He was always where he should have been when left to his own devices, and having once determined his objective and line of action, he never deviated therefrom.

Great as were the accomplishments of Stuart as a cavalry leader, there were several occasions when he allowed himself to be diverted from his main mission by minor issues. His reconnaissance of the Union forces on the Peninsula was turned into a spectacular raid around the Army of the Potomac, and though he did serious damage to Union supply trains and property and also gave Lee information of the exposed Federal right flank, likewise he warned McClellan of the danger to his communications with his base at White House on the York, and caused that general to shift his base to the James, largely nullifying Lee's plan of campaign. Forrest would never have been guilty of Stuart's act of bravado on July 3, 1862. Having discovered that Evelington Heights north of the James, were not occupied and that they completely dominated the Union position at Harrison's Landing after the withdrawal of their forces there following the battle of Malvern Hill, Stuart seized the ridge. Then, instead of concealing his cavalry and awaiting for the infantry to arrive, which would have forced McClellan to attack under most unfavorable circumstances, Stuart ordered the solitary howitzer which he had with him to open fire on the Union camp. The Federals, alarmed at the danger, promptly assaulted, drove Stuart away, then occupied the heights with adequate artillery and infantry, thus removing this peril to their army.

Again, the principal mission of the cavalry never would have been forgotten during the Gettysburg campaign, and Forrest would not have allowed, himself to be sidetracked from his main purpose for the sake of a brilliant raid which left Lee without "the eyes and ears" of his army, and without vital information of the enemy's forces.

For resource, endurance, and full utilization of every possible means for success, where the hostile forces considerably outnumbered his own, Forrest's pursuit and capture of Steight's raiders is a perfect example.

The battle at Brice's Cross-Roads on June 10, 1864, is a model of the correct coordinated use of artillery and dismounted cavalry, combined with mounted action against the enemy's flanks. A favorite battle position of Forrest was used here, namely close to his artillery, which was almost within shotgun range of the enemy. With much inferior forces Forrest defeated the Union troops, most of whom were armed with breech-loading repeating rifles and carbines, and his fierce and unrelenting pursuit for two days of Sturgis' command over fifty miles, has no parallel in the history of the war. Jefferson Davis said of this battle: "That battle was not a cavalry raid nor an

accident. It was the conception of a man endowed with a genius of war."

One of his greatest feats was the covering of Hood's retreat after that general's disastrous defeat at Nashville. It was a masterpiece of defensive tactics and rear guard actions.

A careful study of Forrest's operations reveals the fact that his success was due, not as first supposed, to dash alone, but to thorough knowledge of the military situation and carefully planned movements which placed the enemy at a disadvantage with the odds in his own favor. Surely no student of military strategy could devise a truer principle. No one could have been more daring when daring was required, but with this daring there was always prudence. Forrest never initiated an operation where there was not reasonable probability of success.

In some respects Forrest's military career resembled that of Oliver Cromwell. The great Protector started as a troop commander at 43 years of age, without military education or experience. He rose to be captain-general of the Parliamentary forces, but it was as a cavalry commander that his genius was outstanding. At Marston Moor his attack with the cavalry on the Royalist right and rear gained victory for his forces, and at Naseby his mounted charge on the Royalist left flank won the day and decided the war. Cromwell was primarily a cavalry soldier, a genius at handling cavalry tactically, and to him, his unbreakable will, his clarity of vision, and quickness of decision, was due the victory of the Parliamentary armies. Untaught in the art of war, without a military

education or early experience, he became the foremost cavalry commander of his era. In affairs of state he was always a soldier; as a soldier he was always a cavalryman.

Forrest enlisted as a private soldier in the Confederate army in June, 1861, at forty years of age, having had no previous military training, yet before the war ended he became a lieutenant general. He acquired his education in strategy and tactics in the hard school of war, and became a master of both, for his fundamental and practical knowledge was worth far more than any superficial theoretical learning. Recognition of his great ability was tardily acknowledged, and his advancement, almost reluctantly given, was due to many of the same qualities of character that caused Cromwell's promotion—magnificent personal courage and daring, tireless energy, careful calculation, and preparation of his undertakings, but above all to his clear thinking, common-sense mind that viewed all the elements of a situation and made him perceive the correct line of action, and this having been selected, the unflinching will to carry it through to a successful conclusion. He deserves even greater praise than that accorded to him by General Wolseley who wrote: "Inspired with true military instincts, he was verily nature's soldier. It would be difficult in all history to find a more varied career than his, a man who from the greatest poverty, without any learning, and by sheer force of character alone became the great fighting leader of fighting men, a man in whom an extraordinary military instinct and sound common sense supplied to a very large extent his unfortunate want of military education."

## Do You Know That?\*

THERE are fourteen regiments of Cavalry in the United States Regular Army. Twelve of them Horse Cavalry, two of them, the 1st and 13th, Mechanized Cavalry.

Each Horse Regiment has a mechanized Scout Car Platoon.

Each Rifle Troop has a Light Machine-Gun Platoon (Browning Air-cooled guns).

No terrain can block the advance of Horse Cavalry except cliffs, oceans, lakes, and swamps.

Russia has more Horse Cavalry than the United States has combat troops in continental United States.

The United States stands eighteenth in relative size of its Army, just below Greece.

The United States stands forty-eighth among Nations of the World in the percentage of population maintained as soldiers. (France at the top with fourteen per cent of

its population as soldiers. The United States near the bottom with thirty-six one hundredths of one per cent. Only Denmark, the Dominican Republic, Costa Rica, El Salvador, Haiti, Honduras, and Venezuela are below the United States.)

The annual per capita cost of the United States National Defense (Army and Navy) is \$5.08. Germany \$8.25; Japan \$13.39; Italy \$13.88; Great Britain \$15.28; France \$22.59; Russia \$33.26.

The United States ranks twenty-third among Nations of the World in the percentage of its budget spent on National Defense.

Measured by any yard stick, the United States stands near the bottom in Military preparedness among the important Nations of the World. It stands number one in the wealth it has to protect.

\*From 301st Cavalry Bulletin.

# Point-to-Point Racing at the Cavalry School

By First Lieutenant Edwin H. J. Carns, Cavalry

**D**URING the past few years true Point-to-Point racing has been revived successfully in eastern hunting communities. Cavalry officers observing or participating in the sport and those officers who merely read about Point-to-Points were impressed by their value in training Cavalry officers in cross-country riding. With both sport and training in mind, two Point-to-Point meetings were conducted at the Cavalry School with excellent results during the past year by the Department of Horsemanship. The races were received enthusiastically by contestants and spectators alike.

Late in September conditions were announced for a meet to be held on November 22d. Three events were scheduled so that anyone and everyone might enter their horses in fair competition. A résumé of the notice published appears below:

## "ELIGIBILITY:

*Event No. 1.*—Students' Point-to-Point. Open to students of the Advanced Equitation and Regular Classes, The Cavalry School, riding horses regularly

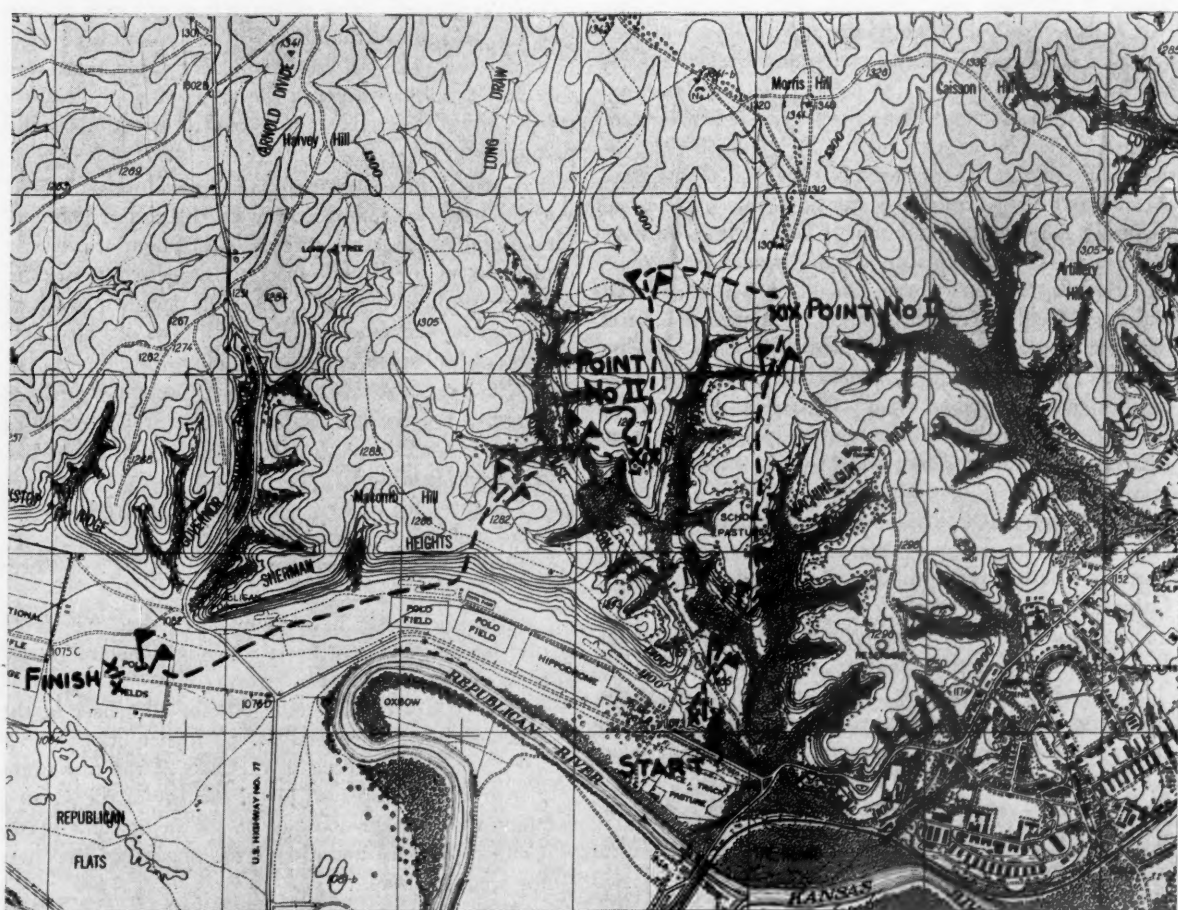
assigned to their respective classes. Trophies to first and second.

*Event No. 2.*—Regimental Point-to-Point. Open to officers on duty with Cavalry School troops (9th Cavalry excepted) and to members of their families riding private mounts or horses assigned to their respective organizations. Trophies to first and second.

*Event No. 3.*—Academic Division Point-to-Point. Open to officers on duty with the Staff and Faculty, The Cavalry School, 9th Cavalry, Cavalry Board, and to members of their families riding private mounts, staff chargers, or instructors' mounts. Students of the Advanced Equitation and Regular Classes and members of their families are eligible riding their own private mounts. Trophies to first and second.

General: Visiting officers and members of their families are eligible for Event No. 2 and Event No. 3, riding horses eligible under the conditions for those two events.

There will be an entry fee of fifty cents per horse,



Map showing the location of the start, finish, and points in the Cavalry School fall Point-to-Point—November 22, 1936. The broken line follows the shortest route.



charged on the Cavalry School Club bill.

**CONDITIONS:** Conditions for each event will be the same. On the day prior to the event, maps showing the start, two points, and finish will be displayed. Contestants may reconnoiter routes at any time before noon, November 22, 1936.

In each event, contestants will be started simultaneously. They will ride to the designated points in order, then to the finish. Individuals may follow any route they desire. There will be judges at each point to check contestants. No stop is required at points.

At the finish line horses will be checked for condition by judges. Any horse showing distress or lameness will be disqualified. The first 'undistressed,' sound horse to finish the course will be the winner.

The first event will start at 2:00 PM; succeeding events at 45 minute intervals."

The starting line was located on the level ground east of the Pumphouse and north of Race Track Pasture. Points were selected in the School Pasture area. The course ended at the Polo Bungalow where spectators were requested to assemble.

A contestant riding the shortest course covered four miles of extremely rugged terrain. He found seven fences in his path, none of which were over three feet two inches. Several other routes appeared to have advantages but, in general, all contestants rode the same course.

The first race started at 2:00 PM on November 22d. *Sally F* ridden by Lieutenant W. W. Culp of the Advanced Equitation Class started fast and led all the way. A hundred yards from the finish, Lieutenant C. A. Lichirie, Advanced Equitation Class, riding *Muddy Waters*, was in second place. *Metallic*, ridden by Captain M. H. Marcus, 2d Platoon, Regular Class, closed fast and beat *Muddy Waters* by a nose. After checking horses for condition the judges disqualified *Sally F* for showing distress. First place went to *Metallic* and second to *Muddy Waters*. Lieutenant W. E. Chandler, riding *Anita Mentor*, was third, and Lieutenant W. H. S. Wright on *Fitzera* was fourth. There were twenty entries in this event.

The Regimental Point-to-Point was a hotly contested race between members of the 2d Cavalry and the 1st Battalion, 84th Field Artillery. Twenty horses started. Captain T. S. Gunby, 84th Field Artillery, riding his own *Wilbey* was first across the line, followed by Lieutenant B. S. Cairns, 2d Cavalry, on *Tony*, and Lieutenant G. W. Thornbrough, 2d Cavalry, riding *Tangle*. Again, the first horse home was disqualified for showing distress and places were awarded to *Tony* and *Tangle* in that order. Third place was awarded to Lieutenant J. K. Bryan, 84th Field Artillery, on *Burnadette* and fourth place to Lieutenant T. C. Foote, 84th Field Artillery, riding *Ogalala*.

The Academic Division Point-to-Point closed the afternoon's racing. Lieutenant R. W. Porter, riding *Gold-seeker*, nosed out Lieutenant J. K. Waters riding his own *Egoist*. Neither horse showed distress or lameness, and

places were awarded in that order. Major R. C. Winchester riding *Sloan's Favorite* finished third and Lieutenant P. D. Harkins riding *Walter Knapp* was fourth. There were fourteen entries, among them being Mrs. J. K. Waters riding her own horse, the *Fox*.

And so Point-to-Point racing had its rebirth at the Cavalry School. Spectators and contestants remained at the Polo Bungalow to have supper and to discuss the events of the afternoon. It was obvious that a spring meeting would be even more popular.

The fall Point-to-Point as an event left much to be desired. A course only four miles in length tempted riders to push their horses too fast. The threat of disqualification was not sufficient restraint, nor was rugged terrain. It appeared that a longer course would insure more careful conditioning prior to the event and more intelligent riding in the race itself.

The low fences invited the entry of horses not suitable or not trained sufficiently for fast cross-country riding over obstacles. The events showed that only qualified hunters were suitable to condition for a Point-to-Point.

Allowing contestants to reconnoiter the course had undesirable results. During the twenty-four hours allowed, almost every contestant had walked or ridden every foot of the course. The result was a bunched field in each race because most of the riders had decided to follow the shortest route. They had reconnoitered the ground so well that they knew every foot of the route. The result was a faster pace than such rugged country would normally permit.

To correct these apparent faults, conditions were revised. They were published toward the end of February for a meeting in April. The excellent turnout of privately owned horses in the fall meeting suggested a race for them in April. Two other events were designed to attract the better hunters among the public horses of Fort Riley. Conditions as announced were as follows:

"GENERAL—All horses entered must be qualified hunters. For the purpose of this meeting, a qualified hunter is one that has hunted six times during the current hunting season.

An entry fee of fifty cents will be charged on the April club bill for each horse entered.

Distance for each event will be about six miles over natural hunting country.

After the finish, horses will be checked for condition by judges. Any horse showing lameness or distress will be disqualified.

On the day of the Point-to-Point all fences in the area will be approximately 3' 6" in height.

Fifteen minutes prior to the start of the first event a map will be displayed in the vicinity of the starting point showing the location of the points and finish. Contestants must not attempt reconnaissance after having seen that map.

**FIRST EVENT.—PRIVATELY OWNED OFFICERS' MOUNTS**

Open to horses owned by an officer of the U. S.



Map showing the start, finish, and points in the Cavalry School spring Point-to-Point—April 11, 1937. The broken line follows the shortest route.

Army. Riders must be officers or members of their families. Trophy to first place.

#### SECOND EVENT.—ADVANCED EQUITATION CLASS

Open to members of the Advanced Equitation Class riding regularly assigned green chargers. Trophy to first place.

#### THIRD EVENT.—TEAMS OF FOUR

Open to teams of four riders from each of the following units:

- 2d Cavalry
- 1st Battalion, 84th Field Artillery
- Academic Division (less Department of Horsemanship)
- Department of Horsemanship
- 1st Platoon, Regular Class
- 2d Platoon, Regular Class.

Trophy to first individual; trophies to individual members of winning team.

Horses must be regularly assigned to the unit making entry. Riders must be officers assigned to the unit making entry."

These conditions restricted the number of entries but

they insured the entry of horses who were capable of doing the work. We desired to improve the sport by barring horses not suitable for strenuous cross-country effort in competition.

Races were started at Camp Whitside at intervals of one hour. Point No. 1 was located in School Pasture No. 4 and Point No. 2 at Morris Hill. The finish was in School Pasture No. 2. Spectators were assembled on a ridge in School Pasture No. 2 which afforded an excellent view of the course and a close view of the finish.

In the first event (Privately Owned Officers' Mounts) eight horses started. Lieutenant J. K. Waters, riding his own mount *Egoist*, rode boldly, setting a fast pace. He crossed the finish line in 17 minutes and 25 seconds, leading *Danavarre*, owned and ridden by Lieutenant W. Miller by ten lengths. *Doctor Dreamer* (Major I. G. Walker) and *Wilkey* (Captain T. Gunby) finished third and fourth, respectively.

It was a splendid race with eight officers' chargers finishing the six rugged miles in excellent condition. No horses went down over fences and none finished lame or distressed.

The other four entries were:

Lieutenant Colonel W. M. Grimes, riding *Miss Blue Ridge*.

Captain J. W. Wofford, riding *Diplomat*.

Captain Charles G. Meehan, riding *Max*.

Lieutenant C. A. Symroski, riding Captain O. Ellis' *Burnadette*.

Lieutenant G. R. Mather, riding *Coffee Cake*, won the race open to members of the Advanced Equitation Class, in which nine horses ran. *Coffee Cake* finished strong, leading *Reno Granite* (Lieutenant C. A. Lichirie) by six lengths. *Canolito*, ridden by Lieutenant C. B. McClelland faded in the last quarter mile but finished third, just ahead of *Reno Grandeur* (Lieutenant J. B. Quill).

In this race, one horse went down, *Mentor's Lass*, ridden by Lieutenant W. W. Culp. A mile from the finish she fell taking an aiken fence. Neither horse nor rider was injured. All other horses finished in splendid condition.

The final event proved to be the most exciting of all. There were teams of four entered from each of the following:

Department of Horsemanship

2d Cavalry

1st Platoon, Regular Class

2d Platoon, Regular Class.

In a driving finish, Captain J. T. Ward on *Dunstan* won the individual trophy. Lieutenant S. Whipple, Jr., riding *Dusty Shoes*, finished second.

In figuring the winning team, complications arose.

Each team had suffered one mishap. The award was made to the 2d Cavalry on a basis of three horses instead of four.

The members of the winning team were:

*Dusty Shoes*, ridden by Lieutenant S. Whipple, Jr.

*Fantastic King*, ridden by Lieutenant B. S. Cairns.

*Tony*, ridden by Lieutenant D. Adamson.

The winning time varied but little in the three races. The fastest being 17 minutes and 15 seconds and the slowest 17 minutes and 25 seconds. The winners covered the six miles of rough country cut by deep canyons at a rate of about 21 miles per hour. One horse finished lame but none finished distressed. The riders, generally, were to be congratulated for exercising care in conditioning and riding their horses. They demonstrated what might be expected from a good horse and a good horseman in a case of military necessity.

It is hoped that Point-to-Point racing will become a fixture throughout the mounted services. Training and conditioning his mount for such an event is extremely valuable experience for an officer. Riding an intelligent cross-country race on the horse he has trained is not only keen sport but a definite measure of his ability as a horseman.

The value of this type of training was recognized by the Commandant, Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, the Assistant Commandant, Colonel Clarence Lininger, and by Major Kent C. Lambert, Chief of the Department of Horsemanship, who gave enthusiastic support to Point-to-Point racing at the Cavalry School.

## The Cavalry School Visits Fort Knox

"If the mountain will not come to Mahomet, Mahomet will go to the mountain."

Early in 1936, Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, Commandant of The Cavalry School, requested that the Seventh Cavalry Brigade (Mechanized) be sent to Fort Riley for maneuvers and exercises in 1937. Funds could not be found to move a whole brigade but were sufficient for a small detachment of officers and men to go from Fort Riley to Fort Knox and return.

In 1934 the First Cavalry (Mechanized) paid a visit to The Cavalry School for extensive maneuvers in which the horse and mechanized cavalry operated both in conjunction with and in opposition to one another. Many valuable lessons were learned; but even in the few years elapsing, tremendous strides have been made with mechanized matériel; the Seventh Cavalry Brigade has been organized; the Thirteenth Cavalry has joined the mechanized family. Very few items of equipment of the First Cavalry that were seen and demonstrated in Fort Riley in 1934 remain with that regiment today, noting, in justice to all, that the Thirteenth Cavalry (Mechanized) has fallen heir to some.

The Cavalry School's mechanized equipment is extremely limited, yet its teachings of mechanization should be all-inclusive. Theoretical instruction must of necessity be based upon the experiences of those who have served with or visited our mechanized cavalry, or upon the theoretical studies of mechanization of our own or other armies. The solving of problems involving mechanization by students involves the tedious processes of memory and imagination. Then too, lack of practical experience might lead cavalry doctrines and principles astray.

So, after a lapse of three years, although it would have been highly desirable to have again the horse and mechanized cavalry operating with and against one another, arrangements were made whereby representatives of the Cavalry School could view the mechanized brigade at its own station in exercises involving mechanization alone. The week May 8-16, 1937, was set aside by mutual agreement between Fort Knox and Fort Riley and the Office of The Chief of Cavalry. The party consisting of Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, Commandant; Colonel Clarence Lininger, Assistant Commandant; Colonel Dorsey R. Rodney, Second Cavalry; Lieutenant Colonel



Cuthbert P. Stearns, Executive, Academic Division; sixteen other members of the Staff and Faculty; ten members of the Advanced Equitation Class; twenty-nine members of the Regular Class; and a few other officers, totaling sixty, with ten enlisted men, left by train on May 8th and were met the following morning at Louisville, Kentucky, from which place they were taken by motor to Fort Knox. Upon arrival at Fort Knox, the officers were entertained at breakfast by Brigadier General Daniel Van Voorhis, Commanding, and Lieutenant Colonel Willis D. Crittenger and Major Carl J. Rohsenberger, the latter two members of the Post and Brigade Staff.

The following morning began a week of intensive explanations, demonstrations, exercises, and maneuvers. The salient features of that week will be touched upon below, although it should be known that much of an instructive nature occurred that cannot be dealt with as fully as its value warrants in an article of this character.

#### MONDAY, MAY 10TH

General Van Voorhis in a brief conference at 8:30 AM outlined the rôle of mechanized cavalry and presented its capabilities and limitations. He reviewed the progress that has been made in its equipment and armament, and discussed the tactical employment of a mechanized cavalry brigade. Pointing out that mechanized cavalry was new and still in an experimental stage, he solicited original ideas, constructive criticism, and serious thought in order that Cavalry, having been given this powerful equipment, might make the most of its opportunity.

After this conference the group was taken in charge by the Commanding Officers of the First Cavalry (Colonel Bruce Palmer), the Thirteenth Cavalry (Colonel Charles L. Scott), and the First Battalion, 68th Field Artillery (Major Basil Perry), who had their commands in column on the road. These commanders explained each type of vehicle with which their units were equipped. The characteristics, armor, and armament were pointed out as each type of vehicle was reached. From a comparison of the old and new, it was apparent that careful study and thorough testing of vehicles and equipment had produced gratifying results. *Improvements are being continuously made as weaknesses develop and, as a result of experience and analysis, steady progress has been made.*

Following this inspection the Brigade passed in review in column on the road. Having previously seen the vehicles as they stood in the road, it was doubly interesting to note the speed at which they passed the reviewing stand—about 30 miles per hour. This was a very impressive sight to those who viewed it for the first time.

In the afternoon all were given an opportunity to ride in each type of vehicle—combat car, scout car, armored car, half-track personnel carrier, and mortar mount. The drivers of all vehicles demonstrated particular skill.

#### TUESDAY, MAY 11TH

A simple advance guard problem was held in the morn-

ing chiefly for the purpose of demonstrating the fire power and the mutual employment of caliber .30 and .50 machine guns, smoke and artillery fire. Within a very short time the advance guard was able to bring into play all of its means of fire power and, thus protected, attack the enemy in combination with maneuver to secure the desired position for further advance of the main body.

#### TUESDAY AFTERNOON-WEDNESDAY MORNING AND AFTERNOON (MAY 11TH AND 12TH)

The group was divided and spent an hour or two with each type of troop to learn something of its methods of operation.

The reconnaissance troop demonstrated its capabilities as a reconnaissance element of the Brigade. Platoons were dispatched well to the front to make a rapid road reconnaissance while the troop command post was established and messages were received and sent. The troop commander performed a considerable amount of intelligence work in the evaluation of information received from his platoons before dispatching information to the brigade commander. *In the ordinary case the entire troop must be used on its missions leaving none in reserve for special reconnaissance under the direction of the brigade commander or the regimental commander.*

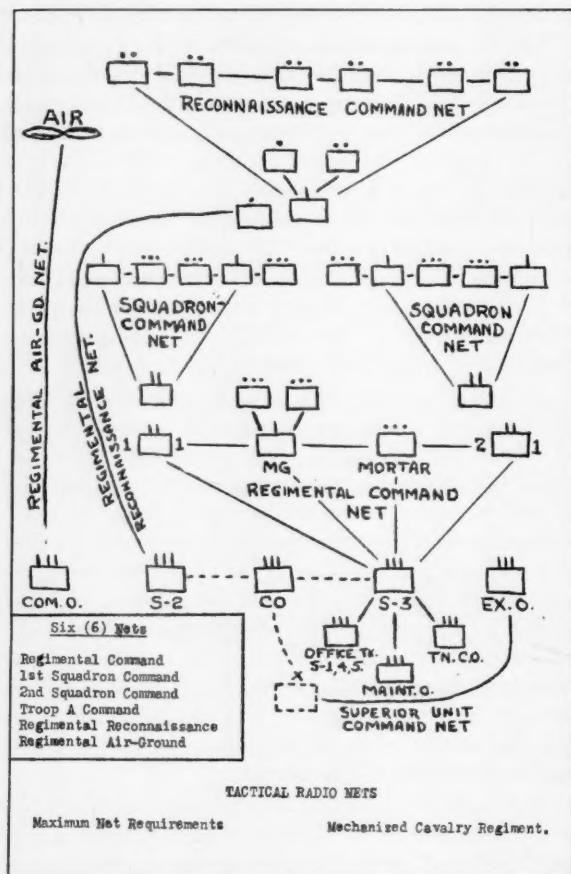
A combat car troop first gave an exhibition of troop drill in which control was exercised by a simple system of colored flag signals. A short march through woods, across streams, over embankments and through swampy ground showed that the combat car is master of many types of terrain heretofore considered impassable. A slide down a bank and into a stream reminded our horse cavalrymen of the Devil's Slide in Magazine Canyon at Fort Riley. A very favorable impression was left of the powers of the combat car. *It must be considered, however, that driving with the turret closed and looking through the slit would present some difficulties and to fire guns accurately while negotiating rough terrain would require a long period of training.*

The machine gun troop demonstrated the occupation of a position and the method of moving forward to occupy and hold vital terrain captured by the regiment. The troop, transported in half-track vehicles, was able to dismount, move the guns to favorable firing positions and place fire on the target with great celerity. It was equally efficient in going out of action and moving forward to the next position. The troop is equipped with the light machine gun rather than the heavy water-cooled machine gun, because one man can readily carry the light gun and his tripod.

During this day and a half with the different troops, many questions covering tactical employment, armament, equipment, organization, formations, and maintenance were cleared up in the minds of the visitors. Each one was given an opportunity to drive one of the combat cars and, while not all responded with equal skill, he learned something of the troubles that beset the combat car driver.

THURSDAY, MAY 13TH

All command vehicles of the brigade were spread out within sight of the group. Messages were received and sent and orders were given employing means as radio and the motorcycle messenger. One was struck with the equipment necessary for coordination, but considering the speed with which mechanization moves, the great extent of terrain over which it operates, the mechanical difficulties inherent in most methods of communication, one is led to believe that the amount on hand is not in excess of the absolute minimum needs. *Unless all elements of his force*



can respond promptly to his wishes, the commander of a mechanized regiment or brigade cannot hope to accomplish his mission.

The remainder of the morning was spent in visiting and studying the maintenance activities of the brigade. This element seemed very highly organized and efficient. *Without efficient maintenance the regiment or brigade cannot move and unless it moves and moves rapidly its operations will fail.*

The early part of the afternoon was spent in a visit to the United States Treasury Gold Depository where millions and even billions of gold is locked up. Some gold was being received at the time and it was noted that the saying "familiarity breeds contempt" applied to its keepers.

Later in the afternoon Lieutenant Colonel Crittenger presented a narrative of the operations of the mechanized brigade during the Second Army Maneuvers held last summer. He gave a comprehensive discussion of the employment of mechanization under the conditions portrayed.

FRIDAY, MAY 14TH

In the morning there was a demonstration consisting of an attack by a mechanized cavalry regiment supported by artillery. The class was placed on terrain from which both the hostile position and all elements of the regiment could be seen in action.

The demonstration opened with reconnaissance of an area by airplanes, followed by armored car platoons operating by sections, thus illustrating the teamwork of aviation and rapidly moving ground reconnaissance agencies.

Shortly thereafter, the advance guard consisting of a machine-gun platoon, a rifle section and a combat-car platoon arrived and engaged the Red position by fire from a position near the axis of movement. The machine-gun platoon provided the major portion of the fire power while the combat cars worked around toward a Red flank. The armored cars continued to push their reconnaissance around the Red flanks and toward the Red rear.

The regimental commander (Colonel Bruce Palmer) arrived, accompanied by his artillery commander and other members of the staff. After the situation was learned he issued his attack order. The terrain in front of the left of the hostile position was fairly open and offered few obstacles. The regimental commander, therefore, decided to attack the hostile left and continue the attack through to high ground about 2,000 yards in rear of the hostile rear. He reinforced the advance guard in order to obtain greater fire power. The field artillery was given the mission of firing on the hostile position initially, thereafter counter-battery. The mortar platoon was ordered to place smoke 300 to 500 yards in front of the hostile position to cover the attack of the combat cars. The main attack was to be made with combat car squadrons abreast, each squadron to attack in depth. The line of departure was laid along a well defined road from which the hostile position could be reached by the combat cars in about two minutes. The time of attack was coordinated by radio in code, a visual signal to the nearer combat car squadron, and the time element specified in relation to the smoke screen. The service park, aid station, and small reserve and command posts were provided, designated, and located.

Both the development of the hostile position and the attack were well carried out. The exercise afforded the officers from Fort Riley an opportunity to fix in their minds an attack by mechanized cavalry supported by machine guns, mortars, and artillery. The demonstration emphasized the importance of reconnaissance, communications and control before, during and after an attack.

A test of mortars was held during the afternoon. The

First Cavalry is armed with a 4.2-inch mortar and the infantry uses an 81-mm. mortar. The test was for the purpose of comparing the value of the smoke screen furnished by each weapon. The 4.2-inch mortar shell contains four-sevenths more smoke than the 81-mm. and the weapon itself has a range almost twice that of its rival. Single rounds of white phosphorus service ammunition were fired by each mortar, after which a smoke screen was established and maintained for about seven minutes, by two mortars of each type. Both screens were very effective, but to the spectator it appeared that the 4.2-inch mortar was the more effective weapon due to its superior range and greater volume of smoke. *Mechanized cavalry feels that an effective smoke screen is essential as a factor in nearly every attack. Anti-mechanization weapons will usually not be disclosed by the enemy prior to the assault of the combat cars, and even if disclosed many of them will not be disabled by artillery or other fire power supporting the attack. Therefore, the combat cars should be hidden by smoke whenever possible and the hostile gunners denied targets until the last moment.*

#### FRIDAY NIGHT, MAY 14TH-MAY 15TH

Probably the most interesting of the week's exercises occurred Friday night when the mechanized brigade made an all-night march terminating in an attack the following morning. The visiting officers and enlisted men were dis-

tributed in cars throughout the length of the column and, while they may not have gotten a comprehensive conception of the exercise as a whole, they learned a great deal about that portion of mechanization which they accompanied. (See Road Map.)

The march started about 8:00 PM with the brigade moving south on Highway 31-E to Horse Cave, a distance of sixty-seven miles from Fort Knox. The average rate of march was twenty m.p.h. Lights were used and the march was conducted in an excellent manner.

The brigade, less the armored car troop of the First Cavalry, closed and halted at Horse Cave for one hour to refuel and to have a midnight lunch from the kitchen trucks which marched at the tail of each troop.

At this time it was assumed that the brigade had marched from Nashville in the direction of Fort Knox, and that it had now arrived at Horse Cave.

The Armored Car Troop, 1st Cavalry, detailed as the reconnaissance troop of the brigade, left Horse Cave at 11:45 PM and preceded the brigade along its axis at about one hour's distance. It reached Elizabethtown at 12:40 AM, a distance of 39 miles, and New Stitchton at 1:10 AM, a distance of 14 miles. En route this troop moved on a broad front and converged on the Fort Knox Military Reservation for a detailed reconnaissance of the terrain toward the Ohio River and Louisville. It located hostile infantry at the head of Wilson Road Canyon. The hostile outpost line was fixed along the south slope of ridge running generally through OP No. 6-A and extending to the northwest across Baker Road towards BM No. 737. The hostile situation was reported to the brigade commander by radio. (See map next page.)

The brigade, following its advance guard, moved via Highway 31-W toward the Fort Knox Military Reservation, where it arrived at 3:00 AM and was disposed for an attack at daylight. The brigade commander decided to attack with one regiment (1st Cavalry) in line of squadrons astride Wilson Road, and to strike the hostile right (west) flank with the remaining regiment (13th Cavalry) (less one squadron in brigade reserve). (See map.)

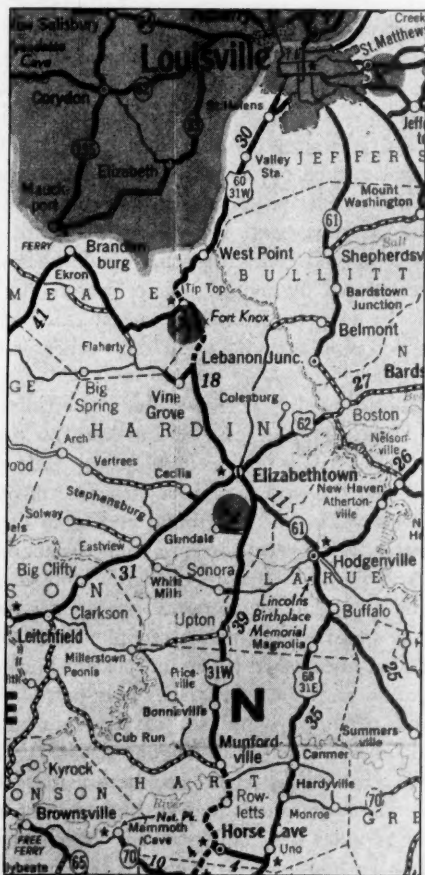
The objective assigned the 1st Cavalry was the high ground at OP No. 6. Its mission was to secure its objective and then push on and seize high ground south of Lincoln road. Direction of attack: along Wilson Road.

The objective assigned to the 13th Cavalry (less one squadron) was the high ground around OP No. 6-A and OP No. 6. It was directed to take over and mop up the position when passed over by the 1st Cavalry. Direction of attack: Baker road—FP No. 6.

The attack of the brigade was supported by smoke from the mortar platoon of the 1st Cavalry and the 1st Battalion, 68th Field Artillery (Mechanized).

The approach to the attack was made just as dawn was breaking. The assault came at daylight and was pushed with great rapidity. The objectives were secured in accordance with the plan and order of the Brigade Commander.

This exercise demonstrated the ability of mechanized







cavalry to march 125 miles during hours of darkness, make a reconnaissance, and at daylight attack an enemy of lesser mobility or one known to be fixed at a known locality. This terminated the instructional activities of the week.

\* \* \*

As an expression of appreciation for the many courtesies extended to the Cavalry School, the visiting officers invited General Van Voorhis and his officers to a stag luncheon at the Club Saturday noon. During the luncheon both General Henry and General Van Voorhis expressed their belief in the value of this trip and the hope that it would be repeated in the future. Actually, plans are under way for the Cavalry School to visit Fort Knox in October, 1937, and for the Mechanized Brigade to visit the Cavalry School during the fiscal year 1939.

\* \* \*

One could ask what had been accomplished by this visit. At once it should be said that cavalry consists of two types with similar missions, but with different means available for the accomplishment of those missions. No cavalryman is complete in his education if he is merely a horse cavalryman or merely a mechanized cavalryman. He must be both. He must know the powers and limitations of each and must be able to think and act, whether on the back of a horse going 5 or 6 miles an hour and 25 to 30 miles a day, or behind the slits in a mechanized vehicle going 20 or 30 miles an hour and 100 to 125 miles a day.

To many, mechanization had been an unknown monster. At Fort Knox they became familiar with this mon-

ster and no longer feared him as something dreadful and unknown, but on the contrary, due to knowledge, acquired a wholesome respect.

All those officers who observed mechanization for the first time or had not seen it recently, came back to Fort Riley with a much broader conception of the manifold varieties of employment that may be expected of our arm during war.

\* \* \*

In a very brief analysis of the employment of cavalry it may be observed that for centuries, and even millenniums, armies have consisted of slow moving, heavy elements combined with lighter elements. The lighter elements have sought out the enemy, brought him to grips, and prepared the way for battle. At the end of battle they have completed the destruction of the enemy or stopped his pursuit to enable the main forces to withdraw with the least possible damage. At all times they have sought information.

Cavalry has constituted the backbone of the lighter elements, and still does, although it now shares some responsibilities with aviation. Each complements the other. Present-day cavalry should be understood as consisting of both horse and mechanized elements.

Horse cavalry has not changed greatly in a number of years except for the heavy increase in fire power conferred upon it by the adoption of the machine gun as one of its important weapons. The horse is able to operate rapidly under all conditions of weather, including rain, fog, and snow; and over all types of terrain, including the rocky, swampy, hilly, and forested, or that interspersed with ditches. Its fire power can be shifted rapidly on the field of battle. It can scatter, continue its movement, and fight back when attacked by aviation. It does not need roads for rapid movement and can ride around gassed areas. For long distance movements it can not race with trucks; therefore, it must be started towards its destination early or be transported by motor, rail, or water. This indicates that the greatest use of horse cavalry exists when the opposing forces are closing upon each other or are engaged.

Mechanized cavalry can travel about five times as fast as horse cavalry on the road. It can keep on the move more hours per day as long as gasoline, oil, and water are available. Off the road it may be either faster or slower than horse cavalry. When ground and other conditions are favorable, it has excellent cross-country mobility and, as observed above, it is not necessarily stopped by any except the most difficult obstacles. Its great power consists of the speed with which it can move and fall upon the enemy at unexpected times and places. Furthermore, it may strike with great violence. It is possible that its speed and armor have put the cavalry mass upon the battlefield in the manner of bygone days. A surprised enemy is very easily overthrown; headquarters may be captured; communications may be broken; vast accumulations of supplies may be destroyed. Mechanization is newer than aviation and experience is lacking to tell us

what may be expected when it is operating under a bold leader. In principle, the Southern Cavalry under Jeb Stuart may return. The mechanized regiment can point over one hundred machine guns into the sky at attacking aviation and continue its march. The enemy's anti-mechanization weapons on the ground are useless unless properly located; and they can't be everywhere. Mechanization is a great menace.

The above paragraphs have drawn attention to certain powers and certain limitations of both horse and mechanized cavalry. It is obvious that they can not be assembled

in a single organization such as a regiment or brigade, their rates and lengths of marches are too different. But skillful commanders have always been able to unite arms of vastly unlike characteristics on the battlefield; surely they can continue to do so with horse cavalry and mechanized cavalry. This would allow them to be used not only separately where each might find ideal conditions for employment, but it would also permit them to be brought together for the accomplishment of a single mission where speed, action and surprise might spell the difference between defeat and victory.



# TODAY

## ORDER YOUR COPY

### OF

## CAVALRY COMBAT

Order Blank on Last Page of This Issue



# PRIDE OF PROFESSION

By James Anthony Reilly

PRIDE of profession is a sentiment without which no one can go far. The enthusiasm to initiate, the will to achieve great things must have their roots in the conviction that the purpose is noble. This conviction is, in its essence, pride of profession in its highest form. In its grand aggregate it exercises a powerful influence on the destiny of nations. Statesmen, scientists, doctors, engineers, soldiers—all render to their countries recognized services that are immeasurably greater because of their pride of profession.

Generally as the professions advance in knowledge and technique they increase in prestige. In recent years no profession has advanced as fast and far in knowledge and technique as the profession of arms. Yet today we find it holding a defensive position not occupied by any profession in modern times; since the advent of the educated era. We frequently find the military profession foolishly being made the bull's-eye for the volleys of vituperation inspired by the anti-war wave of emotion sweeping the world. It is the target of a campaign, ranging in motive from tenderness to treason and featuring much misguided or malicious propaganda, to bring defense into disrepute.

Pacifism is growing. Every Congressional appropriation for defense is opposed, every move of the fighting forces is deplored. The opposition to everything military is comparable to that encountered by the sciences in the medieval days of superstition and utter ignorance. We know the trials and troubles of the men engaged in the pursuit of scientific knowledge in those times. But through pride of profession in the face of ridicule, the sciences survived. The American soldier of today must take heed, and face the disparagement of the misled lovers of peace in transcending pride of profession and the certainty that he is the strongest supporter of peace.

He must not forget, as so many others do, that a nation's desire for peace and its contentment with its place among the nations of the world does not assure it peace. All nations are not content with their places in the world, nor their present shares of the world's goods. Inevitably, this condition some day will make him again the man of the hour.

With pacifist propaganda striving to influence the nation's trends of thought, and not completely failing, the Army must take stronger counter-measures to offset its

effect in the ranks. The soldier's pride of profession is a powerful antidote for the pacifist poison. Commanding officers should increase it in the ranks of their commands. There is ample room for an increase.

The American is not as proud of the profession of arms as the European. The latter never forgets that members of that profession have made more than half the world's written history; have produced the majority of the great figures in the history of every nation. He realizes that through the centuries of civilization the proudest glory of all nations has been the glory of their arms.

The organized defense of one's country is a profession not transcended in nobleness or importance by anything to which a man can turn his hand. It bears a heritage of heroism, sacrifice and glory not equaled by all other callings combined. An American soldier is heir to all the glory of the profession of arms, and more. He represents, in addition to the battle glories of an ever victorious army, the traditions of perpetual service and continuous usefulness, war or peace, that makes the United States Army unique among the armies of the world. He is an important citizen of his country, and more. While the world seethes in the throes of uncertainty and trembles in the fear of new wars, the potential armed might of the United States is a stabilizing force of world-wide scope. And the professional soldier is the nucleus of that potential armed might. The khaki fighting men of peaceful America are the bane of ambitious warlords; and the whole world knows it.

Some day, perhaps, armies will become things of the past. But pending the arrival of that distant day when civilization becomes complete, America must pursue its great destiny without deviation or interruption. It is plain, from the progress in which we lead the world and the advancement we have made for all mankind, that this super-nation composed of elements of all nations is destined to lead the human race to a degree of civilization now unimaginable. A great part of this national destiny, in all its majestic magnanimity, rests on the square shoulders of the American soldier. The world, consciously or not, is depending on him to prevent foreign frustration of this obvious design of Destiny, and the earthly salvation of humanity. He is the guardian and defender of the progress and achievement that is the hope of mankind.

## NAPOLEON'S LI MAXIM OF WAR

*It is the business of cavalry to follow up the victory, and to prevent the beaten enemy from rallying.*





## Brigadier General Charles Burnett, U. S. Army

BRIGADIER GENERAL CHARLES BURNETT, the new Chief of the Bureau of Insular Affairs, graduated from West Point, class of 1901, was assigned to the 15th Cavalry, and sailed almost immediately for the Philippines. After 2½ years duty in Mindanao, chiefly in the Moro country, he returned with his regiment to Fort Myer. Promoted 1st Lieutenant, 4th Cavalry, in January, 1906, he joined the regiment in Mindanao; shortly after joining he was detailed as aide to Brig. Gen. J. J. Pershing. In 1911, he was detailed as language officer to Japan. He rejoined the 4th Cavalry in Hawaii in 1914, but shortly after was transferred to the 1st Cavalry at Monterey, serving with that regiment at Monterey and on the Border. During the World War, he was G-3 of the 30th Division; after the Armistice, Chief of Staff of Base Section No. 1 at St. Nazaire, France.

From 1919 to 1924, he was Military Attaché to the American Embassy in Tokyo, Japan. During the Japanese earthquake of 1923, he was in charge of relief work

for the Embassy. He graduated from the War College in 1925, and returned to Japan as Military Attaché in the winter of 1925. In 1930, he attended the London Naval Conference as Adviser to the American Delegation. From 1930 to 1932, he commanded the 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry, at Fort Ethan Allen, Vt. In 1932 he was detailed on the War Department General Staff as head of the Foreign Liaison and Military Attaché Section of the Military Intelligence Division. After the expiration of his tour on the General Staff, he commanded the 6th Cavalry until detailed as Chief of the Bureau of Insular Affairs.

In addition to the Distinguished Service Medal, Victory Medal, Spanish, Philippine, and Mexican Border Campaign medals, he has the Japanese Order of the Rising Sun, French Legion of Honor, Italian Order of the Crown of Italy, Mexican Order of Military Merit, Ecuador Order of Abdon Calderon, Swedish Order of the Sword.

---

## Special Activities

---

### United States Army Participates in the International Horse Show at Olympia (London)

ON Saturday, June 26th, the curtain was rung down on the twenty-fifth exhibition of the International Horse Show which was held at Olympia, in London. The fifteen thousand seats in the main arena had been well filled for every performance of the Show. The applause from the three-guinea seats, for a good performance, was as generous, as that from those that sold for two and six, for everyone in England, it seems, is a horse enthusiast. Regularly at 4:30 every day, the hall was momentarily deserted, while ladies and gentlemen flocked to the Member's Club, or to Lyons and Co. Ltd., according to their pocket-books, for afternoon tea, and the grooms and the underlings raided the bars to slake their thirst with Guinness's stout or Bass's ale. After every performance, some late at night, hundreds of people milled up and down the corridors between the stalls, petting and pampering the horses and feeding them bags of sugar. The recipient of their affections could be the latest winner or the weariest cart horse. The giver might be a lady in an expensive gown or a lass in a guinea dress; their affections were sincere and their bags of sugar were open to any and all. They were paying homage to the reigning King, the Horse.

Olympia is a large rambling structure, built without a basement and covers a city block. It is located on Kensington High Road, three miles west of Piccadilly Circus. The main ring measures 300 feet by 80 feet. There are stalling facilities for several hundred animals, all accessible to the collecting ring, which is just outside the doors leading into the main ring.

The International Military Jumping events were competed for by Teams representing: Germany, Turkey, Roumania, Belgium, Ireland, England, and the United States. Captain X. Bizard, with six capable jumpers, was the lone representative from France.

The United States was represented by: Captain M. H. Matteson (Team Captain), Captain H. S. Isaacson, Lieutenant F. F. Wing, Jr., and Lieutenant J. O. Curtis, Jr., with the horses *Dakota*, *Dinger*, *Flitter*, *Fralax*, *Masquerader*, *Podhorski*, *Renzo*, and *Ugly*.

There were nine International Competitions in the Show. Two of these, classes 83 and 84 (jumping around the course) were divided into two sections each, due to the large number of entries. The King George the Fifth Cup, was run one day to qualify down to fifteen entries and the finals were run off the next. Civilians and profes-

sionals were not allowed to enter the Military classes.

The results of the Show were as follows:

#### CLASS 83, SECTION A—JUMPING AROUND THE COURSE

1. *Blue Steel*, Major Cameron, England.
2. *Nerto*, Captain Bizard, France.
3. *Tchapken*, Captain Kula, Turkey. All tied for first with no faults.

In this class, *Podhorski* tied for fifth place.

#### CLASS 83, SECTION B

There were eleven clean rounds as follows:

1. *Alchemist*, Lt. Brinckmann, Germany.
2. *Baby*, Major White, England.
3. *Baron the Fourth*, Lt. Brinckmann, Germany.
4. *Blue Dun*, Major Cameron, England.
5. *Goldammer*, Captain Hasse, Germany.
6. *Irrlicht*, Lt. Brinckmann, Germany.
7. *Kineton*, Lt. Talbot-Ponsonby, England.
8. *Landrat*, Lt. Wagenheim, Germany.
9. *Limerick Lace*, Comm. O'Dwyer, Ireland.
10. *Tora*, Capt. Haase, Germany.
11. *Virgule*, Capt. Bizard, France.

#### CLASS 84, SECTION A—JUMPING AROUND THE COURSE

1. *Alchemist*, Lt. Brinckmann, Germany, 0 faults.
2. *Dakota*, Lieut. F. F. Wing, U.S.A., 4 faults.
3. *Limerick Lace*, Comm. O'Dwyer, Ireland, 4 faults.
4. *Olaf*, Captain Barnekow, Germany, 4 faults.

#### CLASS 84, SECTION B

*Baron the Fourth* (Germany) and *Jolka* (Roumania) were tied for first with no faults.

Seven horses were tied for third place with four faults: *Bantry Bay* (Ireland), *Jay* (England), *Nerto* (France), *Schneekonig* (Germany), *Traymore Bay* (Ireland), *Ugly*, (U.S.A.), and *Vindex* (France).

#### CLASS 90—THE EDWARD PRINCE OF WALES CUP FOR ONE TEAM OF THREE TWICE AROUND THE COURSE

1. Ireland with 12 faults.
- 2 and 3. Germany and Belgium, each with 28 faults.
4. England with 44 faults.
5. U.S.A. with 48 faults.

#### CLASS 89—SCURRY STAKES

1. *Gourmet*, ridden by Captain Bizard of France.

2 and 3. *Ibrahim* (Belgium) and *Flitter* (U.S.A.) *Flitter* was ridden by Lieut. F. F. Wing.

CLASS 91 AND 92—Qualifying and final round of the King George the Fifth Cup. Twenty-one horses qualified. Two of these were *Renzo*, ridden by Lieut. J. O. Curtis, and *Dakota*, ridden by Lieut. F. F. Wing. The finals were as follows:

1. *Honduras*, ridden by Captain Bizard, France.

Five horses were tied for second place: *Alchimist* (Germany), *Duballow* (Ireland), *Limerick Lace* (Ireland), *Kineton* (England), and *Renzo* (U.S.A.).

CLASS 88—TOUCH AND OUT OVER SEVEN JUMPS IN A LINE

Six horses were tied for first with clean rounds; there was no jump-off: *Sammy* (England), *Virgule* (France), *Dakota* (U.S.A.), *Dinger* (U.S.A.), *Masquerader* (U.S.A.), *Ugly* (U.S.A.).

CLASS 95—THE HIGH JUMP. Won by Lieut. Rang of Roumania riding *Delfis*, at 7' 0". *Dakota* was our only entry. He failed to clear at 6' 7".

CLASS 94—THE IRISH ARMY CHALLENGE CUP

1. *Ibrahim* (Belgium) o—o

2. *Renzo*, Lieut. Curtis, U.S.A. o—8

Seven horses were tied for third place, one of which was *Dinger* (U.S.A.), ridden by Captain H. S. Isaacson, F.A.

CLASS 97—THE DAILY MAIL CHAMPION CUP. There were thirty-eight entries in this class. We had six horses qualified.

1. *Sammy* (England) o—o

2 and 3. *Red Hugh* (Ireland) o—12

*Honduras* (France) o—12

Six horses were tied for fourth place with four faults each. Two of those were *Dakota* (U.S.A.), and *Renzo* (U.S.A.).

The winnings for the United States Team were as follows: First ribbons, 4; Seconds, 4; Thirds, 2; Fourths, 2; Fifths, 4; money winnings, \$725.00.

Two days after the close of the Show, our Team shipped to Dublin. They are now at McKee Barracks, Dublin, Headquarters of the Irish Horse Show Team. The horses are being trained for participation in the Dublin Horse Show which will be held between the dates August 3d and August 7.

## JUNIOR CAVALRY OF AMERICA

THE Montclair Mounted Troop, Junior Cavalry of America, was started at Montclair, New Jersey, 1930. Its organizers had in mind not only the development of good horsemen but good citizens as well.

Members of the troop are subject to a system of organized, disciplined drill that does more than teach equitation excellence—it builds character.

As Colonel Campbell, the commandant, has often said, "The horsemanship and military training are not an end in themselves, they are but the tools which are used to accomplish an end—that end being better sportsmen and better citizens created through the development of self-discipline and character."

The earnest, interested parents who gather at the Montclair Riding Club nightly to view the troop instruction witness the ability of their sons and daughters to really "take it." Every one of the young riders is learning in a painstaking manner those things that contribute so greatly to the future success of his or her life.

One can see in their drill the development of pride in proper carriage, smart appearance, the ability to keep one's head in unusual circumstances and yet, while it is all so precise and military, the training is not tedious but really fun.

Let us harken back to the origin of this unique organization. It was in 1930 that a group of parents conceived the idea of a mounted troop of boy scouts. Today, after seven years of rapidly growing interest, that nucleus of a few boys has grown into the Junior Cavalry of America, with a total enrollment of two hundred and ten troopers,

in four platoons of boys and three platoons of girls.

The unit is under the command of Colonel R. Potter Campbell, M. I. Reserve, a West Point graduate and former regular army officer. The success of the Junior Cavalry in America is due, in great part, not only to his strong and virile leadership but also to his far-reaching vision and high ideals. He is assisted in the determination of policies by a Parents' Advisory Committee and serving as instructors are Captain Warren T. Stewart, 312th Infantry; 1st Lieutenant George A. Brickman (Cavalry) U. S. Army, retired; 1st Lieutenant Frank N. Gundersen, 302d Cavalry; 1st Lieutenant Joseph C. Dunn, 312th Infantry; 2d Lieutenant Robert L. Smith, 302d Cavalry; 2d Lieutenant John J. Marron, 302d Cavalry; 2d Lieutenant John Gross, 312th Infantry, and Dr. Gerald I. Cetrulo, Master of the Sword, to all of whom great credit and real appreciation is due.

These officers, and those of the Girls Mounted Troop as well, give freely of their time without compensation of any kind, and the greatest reward to all, who give so much to the Junior Cavalry of America, is the keen response of every cadet to their influence and training, and the resulting high standard and morale which these cadets themselves have set for their organization.

For five years Mrs. R. Potter Campbell watched the Montclair Mounted Troop, Junior Cavalry of America, conducted by her husband, develop character and sportsmanship among the boys of the surrounding communities.

Why should not another troop based on the same idea



be formed to give the girls a like opportunity with their brothers to develop a fine spirit of organization, sportsmanship and good fellowship through riding? The opportunity was there and Mrs. Campbell consequently organized the Girls Mounted Troop in 1934.

The troops meet at the Montclair Riding Club at various times according to their platoon affiliations, to receive instruction, mounted and dismounted, in the ways of the cavalry. Always there is an experienced commissioned officer in the ring. The strict military discipline evident at all times has greatly lessened the chances of accident and both troops have excellent records in this respect.

The cadets are always in friendly competition, which starts with inspection and ends at Retreat and the furling of the flag. Obedience becomes a habit and as a trooper is promoted to be a corporal, sergeant or cadet officer, there develops in him or her a noticeable sense of leadership.

The Junior Cavalry of America is a unique organization considerably different from any other group interested in horsemanship. Under the command of Colonel Campbell, it hopes to reach out into new fields, always with the idea that there is the opportunity for every similar community to build into its rising generation the qualifications of good citizenship which are being developed here.

Belonging to the Junior Cavalry of America is always a great adventure for it satisfies the ambitions of the growing boy and girl and gives them the opportunity to stand or fall on their own initiative and abilities. Troop activities are varied and interesting and trips are often made to various points. Among the recent trips was one to Fort Myer where they witnessed an exhibition by the 3d Cavalry and were addressed by Major General Leon B. Kromer, Chief of Cavalry.

(Extracted from the Junior Cavalry of America Year Book, 1937.)

\* \* \* \*

The Foreword in the Year Book of the Junior Cavalry of America, written by "an appreciative father of a trooper," will meet the approval of all cavalymen. It is reprinted in full:

#### FOREWORD

It is often said that the growing boy or girl of today faces a world of changing values wherein ancient virtues of another generation are being decried as vices today. Many bright stars by which their forebears charted their courses through the world have become dim.

But through all the confusion of changing ideals there remain the fundamental virtues of truth, honor and self-control. And these have become more vital than ever to the welfare of youth. Without them as a foundation upon which to build, so-called character is as quicksand; with them, though the pitfalls be many and the temptations great, youth has the power to surmount many obstacles.

What better means of learning these simple principles of life than by association with other boys and girls under the leadership and guidance of those whose ideal it is to give of their best for the love of giving. And what nobler ally could youth have in the attainment of his goal than man's age-old friend—the horse.

Out of some such thoughts as these there grew the vision of the JUNIOR CAVALRY OF AMERICA.

Militaristic? No—only the highest form of self-discipline, entered into readily—even eagerly—under the guidance of officers who have learned to first take and finally give commands, and who know, and never forget the fact that discipline is but a means to an end. To be sure, strict discipline is necessary in mounted formations in order to assure the safety of the troopers. But the question of self-control goes far deeper. The world is ever seeking leaders in every walk of life. But no leader is worthy of the name who has not first learned self-control. Man must first master himself before he can lead his fellow men.

That is the true purpose behind the troopers' discipline in whatever form it may take—the routine drills, the minute inspection of uniforms, the constant competitions among individuals, squads, platoons, and, above all, the handling of the horse.

If you want to learn something of the character of a girl or a boy—put either of them on a horse. Fear, cruelty, or selfishness will quickly manifest themselves if they have not been conquered. Similarly, the finer traits of character are immediately in evidence in the youth who has learned self-control, for then with knowledge of the horse comes love of the animal, kindness, thoughtfulness, mutual confidence—sportsmanship.

With these there necessarily develops a strong sense of honor, self-reliance, dependability and devotion to duty which has its outward symbol in the nightly salute to the Colors.

Thus briefly do we outline the spirit and purpose of the JUNIOR CAVALRY OF AMERICA out of whose ranks may there go into the world girls and boys who will face the future with high moral courage and strength born of truth, honor and self-discipline.

*Both horsed and mechanized cavalry will be present in future warfare, but in what proportion, only circumstances can tell.*—GENERAL MALIN CRAIG, Chief of Staff, U. S. Army, (January-February, 1936, CAVALRY JOURNAL).

# INSPECTION OF STABLES

## As Conducted in the Second Cavalry

THE FOLLOWING was written for the purpose of systematizing and seeking uniformity in inspectional methods of the 2d Cavalry stables, Fort Riley, Kansas. The article is based on the physical set-up of stables and stable area at Fort Riley. Obviously many of the points mentioned will not apply to other posts, due to differences in stables, stable fixtures, and corrals. However, it is hoped that this article will be of instructional value to all interested in stable management.

It is based on the pamphlet "Training Management" issued by the Cavalry School. Inspections should be made in a systematic way and be as formal as conditions allow. Too often an inspection is ordered and carried out and the inspector himself is at a loss as to the exact method he wishes to pursue. In this connection, whenever a commendable condition is noticed commendation should follow and likewise when a fault is noted the proper correction should be indicated.

Stable inspections as indicated herein are of value from several viewpoints: they insure uniformity in stable maintenance, methods of inspection, preparation, and training, direct attention to essentials, insure systematic cleaning and upkeep and detect need for repair. This latter is very important in old stables.

Prior to an inspection, consideration must be given to the object of the inspection, what the inspection is intended to accomplish, how the inspection is to be carried out and the sequence or itinerary to be followed.

The inspecting officer, troop, squadron, or regimental commander, should be accompanied by the stable officer, first sergeant, stable sergeant, and stable orderly; frequently the troop commander should require *all* of his officers to accompany him and at times assist in the inspection.

Particular attention should be directed to the following items during the inspection; no sequence is indicated, as this must of necessity vary with the physical layout of the stable. Any logical system is good which produces results, but the main point is to adopt some system.

### Inspection of:

- Animals.
- Stable area.
- Corrals—picket lines.
- Stalls and standings.
- Watering—feeding.
- Saddle rooms.
- Horseshoeing and saddle shops.
- Fitted extra shoes.
- Tool room and tools.
- Forage room and forage storage.
- Stable shacks.
- Stable sergeant's records.
- Feeding equipment.

- Sick horses.
- Lighting fixtures.
- Fire equipment.
- Fire orders.
- Ventilation.
- Grain cleaning apparatus.
- Fly control equipment.
- Bulletin board.
- Maps.
- Telephone.
- Transportation.

### INSPECTION OF ANIMALS

Obviously the test of good stable management is the condition of horses. It is not the purpose of this article to go into the details of inspection of horses; suffice it to say that horses should be on picket lines, clean, manes and tails properly trimmed and brushed, well shod, feet in good condition and horses in good flesh.

### STABLE AREA

The entire appearance of the area in and around stables, especially back entrances and rear corrals, park where manure wagons are kept, should present a neat and pleasing appearance—one of orderliness; the area should be well policed, lawns neatly mowed, hedges and shrubbery neatly trimmed, sidewalks and roads policed, gutters open and clean, entrances to stable free of ice, snow, droppings, and trash.

### CORRALS—PICKET LINES

(1) Gates and fences strong, in thorough state of repair and without protruding nails, bolts, abrupt projecting portions of material, etc.

(2) Area well drained (gentle slopes and grades to drainage net) and no depressions. Entire corral and stables area free of bailing wire. Drainage ditch along north side.

(3) Water trough; pipes boxed, troughs in first class repair, absolutely clean lines and free of ice, the ground in immediate proximity to troughs should be free of mud and surface drainage.

(4) Picket lines; liberal length, taut and smooth; uprights aligned and free of dangerous projections. Anchorage strong and free of entangling loops. Footing graded and in good repair and with slope same as floor stalls. Standings along picket line same care and attention as stable floor.

(5) Picket lines and corral sprinkled to keep down dust.

(6) Shade or some sort of shelter from sun important in hot weather.

### STALLS—STANDINGS

(1) Footing clean, smooth, and dry. Level in front, sloping in the rear for purpose of draining.





manure wagon, should be present for inspection.

#### HORSESHOEING SHOP—SADDLERS' SHOP

- (1) Windows clean and in good repair.
- (2) Walls, rafters, etc., clean and free from cobwebs.
- (3) Tools neatly arranged and in good repair.
- (4) Forge clean and in good order.
- (5) Floor clean.
- (6) Shoeing record posted and to date.
- (7) List of tools posted.

#### SADDLERS' SHOP

- (1) Clean, stock and working tools neatly stored or arranged.
- (2) List of stock and equipment posted.

#### FITTED EXTRA SHOES

Kept up to date and marked so as to be easily identified.

#### TOOL ROOM

- (1) All tools to be neatly arranged in racks and accessible; clean and in good repair.
- (2) A list of contents of tool room will be posted on wall.

#### FORAGE ROOM—STORAGE

(1) The principle of storage of either large or small quantities of forage is the same, viz: to protect the forage and prevent loss until it is needed for food. Forage room should be clean, dry, and well ventilated; forage must not be piled too high. There should be an air space under forage and floor; hay should preferably be piled *on the side of the bale*; care taken to prevent wastage and untidiness from broken bales. Grain neatly piled, not directly on floor, not piled against walls.

#### STABLE SHACKS

(1) 500 cubic feet air space and 50 feet floor space for each soldier; authorized capacity stenciled on door of each room.

- (2) Beds, painted white and in good repair.
- (3) Bedding, clean and fresh.
- (4) Each bed made up as follows: clean mattress cover on mattress, one blanket spread full length and neatly tucked in at head of bed, top sheet folded back about ten inches over blanket. Remaining blankets and comforter, if any, folded in three folds and placed across top of bed with pillow on top of same, open end to the right as bed is faced from foot.

(5) If the space between the side bars of adjacent beds is not as much as five feet, the men will be required to sleep with the head of one man opposite the feet of the two adjacent men.

(6) Wall lockers; painted, contents uniformly arranged, provided with keys, men present for inspection shall have their lockers open.

(7) Foot lockers, painted, serviceable lock, uniformly arranged, men present for inspection shall have their lockers open and tray tilted to display all contents.

(8) Barrack bag; containing soiled clothing only, hung at the end of bunk next to wall.

(9) Shoes; clean and polished, arranged in uniform manner under bunk.

(10) Equipment; as prescribed by squadron commanders.

(11) Ventilators and heating adequate.

(12) Stoves clean and blacked.

(13) Fuel retainer neat.

Note: Obviously the quarters should be light, comfortable, and required to be kept neat and clean at all times. Dirty stable shacks usually mean the same kind of stables.

#### STABLE SERGEANT'S RECORDS

Forage records, list of animals by Preston Brand, property record, morning report (black board), feeding and watering schedule, heel post cards, of individual feeding, horse sick report, shoeing records. (Note: If practicable there should be an office at each stable where the stable records are kept—providing a desk with adequate facilities for keeping records, goes a long way to insuring well kept records.)

*Forage records.* Up to date, quantity on hand should check with that actually in forage room.

*Horse sick report book.* Accurately kept up to date in ink signed daily by stable sergeant.

*Feeding schedule.* On heel posts for each horse showing number of feeds and amount fed. This should be accurately kept and exactly adhered to.

*Water schedule.* Hours for watering.

*Shoeing records.* This must be accurately kept up to date, posted in shoeing shop.

*Horse record book.* Showing complete history of horse, his characteristics and special information, hunter, polo, jumper, etc. (Note: Such a record properly kept up to date insures an intelligent analysis of the horses of the unit; it is invaluable to incoming officers not familiar with the animals. (Figure III.)

*Feeding equipment.* These generally consist of a small hand cart of some kind and graduated container. These containers are important and should be checked frequently.

*Sick horses.* Segregated and properly cared for.

*Lighting fixtures.* All electric lighting fixtures in and around stables must be carefully checked for fire hazard. No exposed wiring; fuse and switch boxes should be kept locked, key in hands of stable sergeant.

*Fire equipment.*

- (1) Buckets clean, painted, and filled water or sand.
- (2) All equipment exposed and ready for use, such as knives, etc.
- (3) Use of equipment thoroughly understood by all men.

*Fire orders.*

- (1) Fire orders and fire map posted.



Others got rifles and pistols from their troops and fired a little preliminary at tin cans and bottles out on the mesa.

Sixteen contestants entered the modified pentathlon, inaugurated by the shooting phase on the afternoon of May 25th. Insofar as the 7th Cavalry was using the Dona Ana Target Range for its regular range season, all shooting had to be done on the old Castner Range with improvisations. The pistol range slanted uphill and the visibility was only fair; in addition, the contestants were naturally nervous and most of them were firing strange pistols. All these facts combined to make the pistol scores rather low. Lieutenant Hurt had the best eye and steadiest nerves; he made a score of 90 in ten shots fired on the regular "L" target at twenty-five yards.

The contestants then fired the rifle—five shots prone and five shots off-hand at an "A" target from two hundred yards. Insofar as there were no frames for the targets, spotting and discing were done only after each of the two aiming shots allowed. Several of the contestants had not fired a rifle for four or five years and found it difficult to hold and squeeze. In the off-hand position especially, many of the officers were wavering like a Mexican Militiaman. "Maggie's drawers" appeared once or twice—a figurative nose-thumbing from the pits at the efforts of the officers. Lieutenant Wilson, a Thomason Act Reserve Officer, made the best score with a total of 44 out of 50.

The machine gun firing was also done at 200 yards on the "A" target. A preliminary burst of five rounds was allowed and the center of impact spotted so that the contestants could zero their guns. Thereafter, the firing was a simple exercise in aiming and manipulation with twenty seconds allowed in which to fire twenty-five rounds. Some guns grouped well and some had a large dispersion, so that the luck of the draw was a big factor. Lieutenant Jones, another Thomason Act officer, made the highest score with 103 out of 125—excellent firing for a machine gun. As the contestants motored back to Fort Bliss for the swimming phase, Lieutenants Hurt, Jones, Cleary, and Haines were leading the field in aggregate scores.

A large crowd was waiting at the swimming pool to watch that phase of the pentathlon. The contestants were grouped into four heats and required to swim twice the length of the pool—a total distance of two hundred feet. Lieutenant Polk, a former member of the West Point swimming team, plowed through the water in thirty-eight seconds and scored a maximum of 100 points. Lieutenants Jones, Cole, and Snee also won their heats and finished second, third, and fourth in that order. There were several sinkers among the contestants who considered two hundred feet a marathon swim. They finished on

their intestinal fortitude alone, using a combination of the crawl, side stroke, breast stroke, and dog paddle. Many of the contestants came out of the water looking a little dazed—rather like the world was whirling around like a propeller in front of them. So ended the first day of the pentathlon—and the bright lights of Juarez claimed no victims that evening.

The following morning the riding phase was held in Howze Stadium. The contestants were required to execute a schooling phase of ten movements and immediately thereafter take an eight hurdle, 3 feet 6 inches jump course. Most riders made the mistake of picking a horse that would jump well but was a little cold-jawed for schooling. Lieutenant Wilson made an excellent showing on his little gelding, *Bashful*, to top the field with a score of 91 points. Lieutenants Alger, Hurt, and Layton finished second, third, and fourth in that order.

The running phase was probably the most exciting and hotly contested. The course was a 220-yard straight-away with obstacles consisting of bales of hay piled two feet, ten inches high. The hurdles looked rather formidable, and facetious remarks whether a knock-down or run-out would count were bandied about. The lieutenants presented a motley array as they appeared in practically every type of running togs. They wore tennis, gym, basketball, baseball, and even track shoes. Several heats were held up as the contestants good naturedly traded about on shoes. Lieutenant Martz, a West Point quarter-miler, won the event and Lieutenant Alger, a former hurdler from that same institution, came in second. Lieutenants Snee and Haines finished third and fourth. Few of the officers were a picture of aesthetic grace going over the hurdles and several of them reached the other side by doing swan dives, much to the amusement of the large assembled crowd.

The result was now in the hands of the computers and statisticians. After they had worn down several inches of pencil lead checking and double checking, they decided Lieutenant James D. Alger the winner of the modified pentathlon. He was given a beautiful silver pitcher presented by the 8th Cavalry Noncommissioned Officers' Club. Lieutenants Polk, Jones, and Cole finished second, third, and fourth. Insofar as Lieutenants Alger and Jones are bachelors and Lieutenants Polk and Cole married men, some wit remarked that it was a victory of the Q.M. Cots over the Beautyrest Mattresses.

The event was highly successful from every point of view. Mistakes were of course made since mistakes are always made in pioneering anything, but with the experience of one modified pentathlon behind us, there is a great possibility that it may be now made an annual event in the 8th Cavalry.



# Annual Ft. Ethan Allen Horse Show

**B**EFORE a record attendance of 1,200 the 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry, presented its annual Ft. Ethan Allen Horse Show on Sunday, July 11th. Beginning at 9:00 AM the show carried on rapidly and smoothly through 14 classes of jumpers, troopers mounts, chargers, hunters, hacks and saddle horses, and finished at 7:00 PM. The white birch ring to the north of the post was attractively decorated with varied-colored pennants on tall staffs. New boxes were added for an enlarged official guest list and bleacher sections were set in around the outside the ring. An excellent public address system kept the spectators in touch with events throughout the show.

A group of twenty-five Canadian Officers and their ladies visited Ft. Ethan Allen for the show. Most of the uniformed visitors were from the 17th Duke of York's Royal Canadian Hussars of Montreal. Several of the Royal Canadian Dragoons from St. John's Barracks were present. The 6th Duke of Connaught's Royal Canadian Hussars of Le Moyens were also represented. Mr. and Mrs. Stanley Hayes of the United States Consulate at Montreal accompanied the party. All of the Canadians were well known to the Squadron Officers as the Third was well represented at the Montreal Horse Show last fall.



*Silver Trophy from the Officers' Mess, 17th Duke of York's Royal Canadian Hussars to the Officers' Mess of the 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry. LEFT: Lieutenant Colonel Thomas H. Rees, Jr., commanding the 1st Squadron and RIGHT: Major H. E. Steele of the 17th Duke of York's Royal Canadian Hussars.*

At 2:30 in the afternoon the classes were held up for a short time while Major H. E. R. Steele of the 17th D.Y.R.C.H. presented to Lt. Colonel T. H. Rees, Jr., a gift trophy from the Officers' Mess of the 17th Duke of York's Royal Canadian Hussars to the Officers' Mess of the 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry. In the presentation speech Major Steele spoke warmly of historic traditions of the U. S. Cavalry and of the fine spirit of comradeship existing between these two cavalry units of different countries.

The trophy, a 12-inch statuette of a horse, handsomely done in silver, is mounted on a mahogany base embossed with the regimental insignia of the 17th Hussars and the 3d Cavalry and appropriate inscription. It is open to all Squadron officers for annual horse show competition. Around the base small silver saddles are set, and on these will be inscribed the name of the officer winning the greatest number of points in the annual outdoor horse show.

Everyone of the 14 classes of the show was well filled; and the knock-down-and-out and the open jumping each had 31 entries. The response of civilian horsemen from this section of the country was most gratifying. Many of the surrounding towns contributed entries and the summer camps, Brownledge, and Barnard of Mallets Bay, Vt., and Teelawooket of Roxbury, Vt., showed some of the finest horses and riders of the day.

Lt. Colonel Rees on *High Time* took first honors in the hunter class and again on *Betty N* won a first in the officers' charger class. Riding *High Time* once more he placed second in the open jumping. Totaling a score of 13, Lt. Colonel Rees became the first Squadron officer to have his name inscribed on the 17th Hussars' trophy.

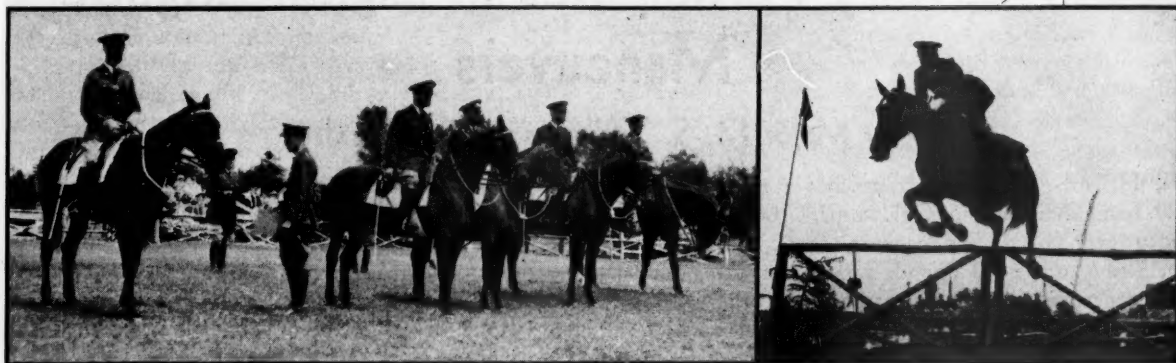
Captain C. C. Jadwin, commanding Troop A, rode the troop's mare *Black Beauty* to top place in two of the most difficult and hardest fought classes of the show: the knock-down-and-out and the open jumping. In the knock-down-and-out Captain Jadwin was forced to jump off a tie with Sgt. Roy Wood, Troop A, on *Come On*. The style that placed Captain Jadwin on the 1936 Olympic jump team was not lost on the show attendance and they were enthusiastic in their applause of his performance. The open-jump course was rendered especially difficult when the advent of a late afternoon shower made the footing precarious. Most of the entries in this class came to grief on the Liverpool.

Mr. F. W. Boswell of Teelawooket camp showed very well with *Racketeer* and *Tidbits*. In the saddle class Mr. Royes also of Teelawooket exhibited one of the handsomest entries of the show in *Silver Crest* and took first place there.

The show was fortunate in obtaining the services of a number of excellent judges, including two Canadian officers. The judging in each class was prompt and in every case clearly indicated the best performances. The list of judges for each event is as follows:

## CLASS NAMES

- I. Lt. Col. T. H. Rees, Jr., 3d Cav., and Major F. H. L. Ryder, 3d Cav.
- Sp. Cl. Major H. E. Watkins, 3d Cav., and Major F. H. L. Ryder, 3d Cav.
- II. Major C. R. Johnson, Cav., DOL., and Capt. W. Foster, QM-Res.
- III. Lt. Col. T. H. Rees, Jr., 3d Cav., and Major S. V. Constant, 3d Cav.



LEFT—Officers' Charger Class, left to right: Captain T. C. Wenzlaff, Captain R. M. Barton, Lieut. Colonel T. H. Rees, Jr., Major S. V. Constant, Major H. E. Watkins, all of the 3d Cavalry; judging in the foreground is Major H. E. R. Steele of the 17th Duke of York's Royal Canadian Hussars of Montreal, Canada.

RIGHT—Major S. V. Constant, 3d Cavalry, on Razor Back clearing the four-foot rustic jump in the Officers' Jumping Class.

- IV. Capt. J. M. Willems, 7th F.A., and Major F. H. L. Ryder, 3d Cav.
- V. Major H. E. R. Steele, M.C., 17th D.Y.R.C. Hussars, Capt. J. M. Willems, and Capt. W. Foster, QM-Res.
- VI. Major H. E. Watkins, 3d Cav., and Major F. H. L. Ryder, 3d Cav.
- VII. Major W. H. W. Reinberg, Cav., DOL., and Capt. W. Foster, QM-Res.
- VIII. Capt. J. M. Willems, 7th F.A., and Capt. C. B. Baker, C.A.V.C.
- IX. Capt. W. Foster, QM-Res., and Major F. H. L. Ryder, 3d Cav.
- X. Major C. R. Johnson, Cav., DOL., and Capt. J. M. Willems, 7th F.A.
- XI. Major F. H. L. Ryder, 3d Cav., and Capt. W. Foster, QM-Res.
- XII. Major F. H. L. Ryder, 3d Cav., and Capt. J. M. Willems, 7th F.A.

#### THE AWARDS

*Class I: Privates' Jumping*—1st, Pvt. 1st cl. Gormley, Tr. A, on *Lady Love*; 2d, Pvt. 1st cl. Clauson, Tr. B, on *Plow Boy*; 3d, Pvt. 1st cl. Regnier, Tr. A, on *Grey Devil*; 4th, Pvt. 1st cl. Rivers, Tr. B, on *Beatrice*.

*Special Class: Children's Jumping*—1st, Victor Constant on *Razor Back*; 2d, Jim Moore on *Chubby*; 3d, Jack Rees on *Betty N*; 4th, Nancy Forsythe on *King*.

*Class II: Children's Novice Class*—1st, Victor Constant on *Chien Lung*; 2d, Janet Hackwell on *Crickett*; 3d, Jim Moore on *Stud*; 4th, Jack Rees on *Betty N*.

*Class III: Noncommissioned officers' mounts*—1st, Corp. Orso, Tr. A, on *Banjo*; 2d, Corp. Tobathko, Tr. B, on *Tea Maid*; 3d, Corp. Gallivan, Tr. A, on *Dynamite*; 4th, Corp. Fay, Tr. B, on *Mary*.

*Class IV: Jumping for R.O.T.C. Students*—1st, Cadet Nilsson, Norwich U., on *Charlie*; 2d, Cadet McGrath, Norwich U., on *Tommy*; 3d, Cadet Fuller, Norwich U.,

on *Reid*; 4th, Cadet Avery, Mass. State College, on *Marlene*.

*Additional Special Brownledge Class: Jumping*—1st, Carol Norton on *Kismet*; 2d Carol Norton on *Colonel*; 3d, Gwendolyn Rogers on *So Long*; 4th, Barbara Brown on *Lady Huntmere*.

*Class V: Officers' Chargers*—1st, Lt. Col. Rees on *Betty N*; 2d, Major Watkins on *King Midas*; 3d, Capt. Wenzlaff on *Milly Russell*; 4th, Capt. Barton on *Wally*.

*Class VI: Noncommissioned Officers' Jumping*—1st, Corp. Olson, Tr. B, on *Socks*; 2d, Sgt. Wood, Tr. A, on *Mugsy*; 3d, Corp. Tobathko, Tr. B, on *Poor Boy*; 4th, Corp. Kuchko, Tr. B, on *Pet*.

*Class VII: Troopers' Mounts*—1st, Pvt. 1st cl. Manning, Tr. A, on *Buckskin*; 2d, Pvt. 1st cl. Large, Tr. A, on *Mugsy*; 3d, Pvt. LaBlanc, Tr. A, on *Bitsy*; 4th, Pvt. 1st cl. Durand, Tr. B, on *Snort*.

*Class VIII: Knock-Down-and-Out Jumping*—1st, Capt. C. C. Jadwin on *Black Beauty*; 2d, Sgt. Wood, Tr. A, on *Come On*; 3d, Corp. Orso, Tr. A, on *Banjo*; 4th, Lt. Rice, 315th Cav-Res., on *Peanuts*.

*Class IX: Road Hack*—1st, Capt. Barton on *Wally*; 2d, Mrs. Watkins on *King Midas*; 3d, Capt. Wenzlaff on *Milly Russell*; 4th, Theodore Bessette on *Peter*.

*Class X: Horses suitable to become Light and Middle-weight Hunters*—1st, Lt. Col. Rees on *High Time*; 2d, F. W. Boswell, Teelawooket Camp, on *Racketeer*; 3d, Major Watkins on *King Midas*; 4th, Major Reinberg on *Temerity*.

*Class XI: Saddle Horses*—1st, Mr. Royes, Teelawooket Camp, on *Silver Crest*; 2d, R. A. Carpenter on *Highland Mann*; 3d, Gertrude Dobbs on *Cricket*; 4th, Theodore Bessette on *Peter*.

*Class XII: Open Jumping*—1st, Capt. Jadwin on *Black Beauty*; 2d, Lt. Col. Rees on *High Time*; 3d, F. W. Boswell, Teelawooket Camp, on *Racketeer*; 4th, Sgt. Wood, Tr. A, on *Come On*.

# 6th Cavalry Participates in Eighth Brigade Maneuvers

By Major M. S. Williamson, 6th Cavalry

THE 6th Cavalry, with attached personnel, left its home station at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, on May 4, 1937, marching on Fort Benning for the purpose of participating in the 8th Brigade Maneuvers, firing combat practice and completing its antiaircraft firing at sleeve targets.

About two weeks prior to the departure of the regiment, each troop trailer had a small ice box constructed in the front end of it. This took up very little space, yet was large enough to hold sufficient ice to care for small amounts of perishables, such as butter, cold pressed meats and small quantities of left over meats, etc. Some troops found this an excellent container for cooling tomato and other fruit juices to be issued to the men on arrival in the next camp. This might sound "recruitish" to some of the old "campaigners," but be assured that it does "hit the spot," "buck up the morale," and "pay good dividends on the picket-line."

On May 14th, the regiment arrived at Ochillee, our camp on the Fort Benning reservation. This is a beautiful spot, very close to clear fresh water (Ochillee Creek) and surrounded by large shade trees, under which the troops pitched their tents and picket lines.

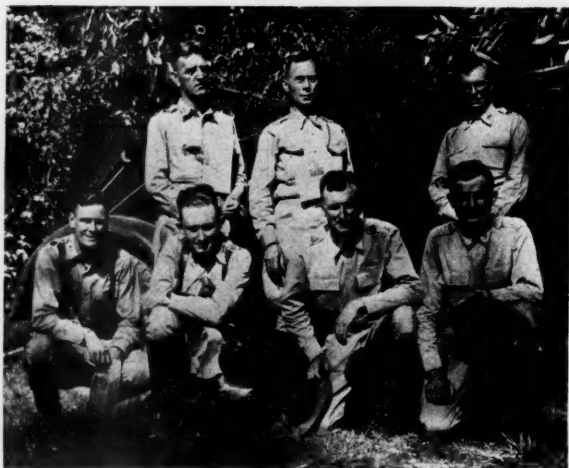
The 8th Brigade Staff and Fort Benning Staff assisted in making this camp a most comfortable one by supplying pyramidal tentage, screened food preparation tents, mess tables, and benches. The Logging Camp detail at Ochillee released their showers to the men. The camp, in general, bid fair to compete with any of the modern "tourist camps."

The following week the regiment began its combat practice. Here again, as is usually the case, those three words, that have been stressed in all combat firing since the beginning of time, "advanced to be recognized": FIRE DISCIPLINE, FIRE CONTROL, and COVER. An excellent opportunity was offered the regiment this year to actually simulate a newly organized war unit, due to the exceptionally high percentage of recruits. On the drill field and when firing blank ammunition, the average regular troop will acquit itself most admirably. When ball ammunition is issued, a new and different story is unfolded. Additional supervision in the training of the CORPORAL must be exercised by all concerned. As expressed by a general officer, who was witnessing the combat practice of this regiment; "an Army composed of d— good corporals would be unbeatable. The CORPORAL can never, as such, be the "Commander," the one to "give the command." He is the one to "talk it up" and then "put it over."

The scout cars, during their combat firing, which was over an improvised course, came in for a great deal of favorable comment, both from the umpires and the ob-

servers. Incidentally, during this firing, the platoon was honored by the presence of the Infantry Board. The terrain over which the cars travelled during their firing was extremely rough. Despite this fact, an unbelievable number of hits were obtained; a great improvement over last year's firing. Several officers present expressed the opinion that the forward gun, mounted on the running board of the car, should be moved to the inside and beside the driver with a telescopic mount. This would give the gun complete frontal traverse and allow for more and better cover for the gunner, in addition to giving the gunner a more secure firing position. The gun, mounted on the flank, should have a traversing stop on the body of the car. This would keep the gun from traversing too far to the front when being fired on rough roads or trails. Also, it would lessen the danger to occupants of the front seat.

Antiaircraft firing at towed sleeve targets next took up the interest of the regiment. Many of the men had never seen a sleeve target, hence were not only willing, but anxious, to see what this was all about. The results of the firing were very satisfactory and all who participated are looking forward to having more of it. Some excellent preliminary instruction was obtained by the regiment on the horizontal Basic Field Manual course prior to its departure from the Post. Facilities at Fort Oglethorpe do not permit an overhead or high angle course. However, plans are now under way to construct a course, similar to



LEFT TO RIGHT: Top—Major M. S. Williamson, Plans and Training Officer; Colonel George Dillman, Commanding Officer; Lieutenant Colonel Henry L. Flynn, Executive Officer. Bottom—1st Lieutenant Hamilton Howze, Scout Car Commander; 2d Lieutenant Paul M. Jones, Communication Officer; Captain J. K. Baker, Adjutant; 1st Lieutenant John T. B. Stroud, Med. Corps.



the course used at Fort Benning, on the Catoosa Rifle Range, about 12 miles from the Post.

In the 8th Brigade Maneuver, which followed the motorized problem, the 6th Cavalry, less the 1st Squadron, was attached to the Blue Forces, which consisted of the 8th and 22d Infantry regiments, Company D, 66th Infantry (Tanks) (less one platoon), and the 1st Battalion, 83d Field Artillery.

The 1st Squadron was attached to the Red Forces, which consisted of the 24th Infantry.

The Blue Cavalry operated on the right flank of the Blue Brigade, which was charged with the mission of protecting the right flank of the Blue I Corps.

The Red Squadron was directed to make a wide encircling movement around the Blue Cavalry, with the mission of cutting the Blue lines of communication and harassing the right and rear of the Blue forces.

Both were true Cavalry missions. Due to the fact that the Red forces covered a very wide front on account of shortage of troops, the Red Cavalry was, for a period of time, out of touch with the situation. This caused them to continue patrolling and outpost duties throughout the night, while other troops were enjoying an armistice. Even so, this Squadron seemed in good spirits, and at daybreak the next morning, they surprised the Blue Cavalry while they were at breakfast. They were informed that this procedure "wasn't cricket, etc." New orders were received at this time from the Red umpires with the result that, throughout the day, the Blue Cavalry was occupied with small skirmishes against the Red Cavalry.

A section of scout cars was attached to the Blue Infantry and placed on the flank for reconnaissance and communication purposes. (The infantry had no radio that could enter the cavalry net.) This proved to be a great asset to both forces later. The cavalry command car was with the Blue Cavalry during the entire maneuver. This resulted in continuous communication between these two forces and the air corps, which kept the cavalry commander informed of the activities of the Red Squadron. Not once was it necessary for the cavalry to send out a mounted messenger to its infantry. Those who have never had the opportunity to operate against the 24th Infantry can be assured that it is a most excellent regiment composed of a body of tireless, aggressive, and enthusiastic soldiers. When pitted against them, at no time is it safe to presume that the situation is "well in hand." The brigade commander held a most instructive critique on completion of this problem.

The Division maneuver was a most interesting and instructive one. In this problem there were no Brigade Staffs, the regiments being directly under the division commander. In this situation the cavalry was given the mission of holding high ground against the advance of the Division, until the arrival of its supporting infantry. The cavalry was then withdrawn to the rear in reserve and was not called upon again, except one troop which was posted on one flank.

Upon receipt of the general and special situations by

the regiment, the commanding officer, Colonel George Dillman, assembled all of the officers and noncommissioned officers in the regiment and, from a large scale map, explained the details of the problem and the part the regiment would play. The noncommissioned officers then were directed to go at once to their platoons and squads and explain, *from their maps*, the details of the maneuver to their men. These instructions were carried out to the letter and the results obtained were the source of much favorable comment by umpires and observers during, as well as after, the maneuver. The corps area commander frequently halted men along the road or going across country, and quizzed them as to just what they were doing and why. The answers received indicated that every man knew exactly what was going on at all times and just what rôle he was playing in each phase of the maneuver. It is granted that some time was expended in explaining these details to the men, but the results more than compensated for the effort and time required. To carry this one step further, when the 6th Cavalry arrived at its Sunday stop-over, the second day out from Fort Benning, en route home, the commanding officer assembled all of the men in the regiment and at that time covered every action in the Division Maneuver in a most interesting critique. This conference was appreciated by all who attended.

When the Blue Division started their withdrawal to the north, across the Upatoi, the Tank Battalion, from Fort Benning, was attached to the cavalry for their final attack. This was the first time the cavalry had worked with the tanks as part of their forces. All who observed this attack were greatly impressed with the speed and thoroughness with which it was carried out. With more experience, there is no doubt about the effectiveness of this combination.

During this particular maneuver, the 6th Cavalry had an excellent opportunity to work with the air corps. Two ships from Fort Bragg had been at Fort Oglethorpe during the spring training, to work with the regiment. Consequently, the Air-Cavalry methods and communications were thoroughly understood by both arms and never failed.

The 6th Cavalry is equipped with 3 SCR 163's, 3 SCR 203's, and 3 SCR 209's radio sets. The 163's and two of the 203 sets are pack sets. The 209 sets are distributed, one set to each scout car section. The other 203 is installed in the regimental command car. (See May-June, 1937, CAVALRY JOURNAL.) No doubt, when the radio fails, it is a dead load and hence a burden. But, when it does function properly, too much good cannot be said of it. The 6th Cavalry communications functioned perfectly on maneuvers this year. Not a single mishap occurred during the entire period of maneuvers. In the last problem, every radio set was in operation for two days and one night and never failed to enter the net on time.

A few words as to the operation of the regimental command car. (See p. 212, May-June number, The CAVALRY JOURNAL.)

Visualize, if you will, a cavalry column moving down a road or trail, its scout cars well out in front, a squadron, troop or other units out on detached missions, all with radio, provided their mission warrants it. A security detachment out ahead of the main column, then the command car followed by the commander's group and main column. The column moves along with its command car ahead receiving and sending messages without a halt. There is a continuous flow of information coming to the commander from his detached units and from the air corps (all of the above mentioned sets will work with the air, two by voice, if desired, as well as by key). The personnel of the car keeps the situation map and journal, writes and delivers messages and, in general, constitutes a moving radio and message center. At any time the commander may have his horse led, while he rides in the car, studies the situation and issues any orders he may wish, dictating the order to the message center chief in person. This is not the dream of a "radio fan," but an actual experience of the 6th Cavalry during the past maneuvers. It is the opinion of the officers of the regiment that they consider the command car as being especially well adapted to the cavalry. To maintain and improve the mobility of cavalry should be uppermost in the minds of all cavalrymen. It is believed that the command car will do a great deal to improve this asset and get information to the commander in time so that he may "DO

SOMETHING ABOUT IT." Much more can be said about the command car. And much was said about it by officers from other arms of the service. All of which was in a commendatory vein. This car moved under its own power over all the roads and trails that the Regimental Headquarters travelled. Some of the trails looked impassable, but they were not. This car might be improved upon; if it were lighter, had a four-wheel drive, no armor, large balloon tires and a light box or bucket seat compartment for the personnel, one would feel safer on rough or muddy roads. The 6th Cavalry has no such equipment, hence used what was available and are well pleased with the results.

Colonel George Dillman joined the regiment on the eve of its departure from the Post. Colonel Dillman is an old 6th Cavalryman, having served in the regiment from 1905 to 1918. On his arrival he found some of the "old soldiers" still with the regiment. His fine example of leadership kept the entire regiment on its toes throughout the march and maneuver.

Enough cannot be said about the excellent cooperation accorded the 6th Cavalry by our good friends, the officers of Fort Benning and the Infantry School. At no time did the regiment evidence a want or desire that was not met wholeheartedly by this group of infantry officers. The 6th Cavalry appreciates their cooperation and hospitality.

1 1 1

## The Use of a Portable Amplifier (Loud Speaker) Outfit

By Major John D. Hood, Cavalry Instructor, Idaho National Guard

**P**RESENT methods of transportation have long passed the horse and buggy days. The cavalry has kept abreast with the time by initiating mechanized cavalry, by increasing mobility with motorized cavalry, by eliminating the saber and by increased fire power to the horse cavalry. However, with the speaking voice, which must constantly be used to convey instruction and to give commands, there has been little or no change from the method of the long past. To carry the voice, the ordinary speaker still rasps and tears his throat and turns blue in the face. Sometimes a megaphone is used, with indifferent success. Science has now bestowed upon us the "loud speaker." The advantages offered by its use are unlimited and apparently are not fully appreciated in the service.

On several occasions, the author has used a portable amplifier outfit with marked advantage and success as a means of giving detailed instructions to large units of the cavalry of the National Guard. Prior to a field exercise or maneuver, it has proven of particular value in creating collective interest. Frequently, a well planned field operation gets out of hand. Units stray and participants fail to know the mission and objective because the spoken word of instruction, conveyed by voice, is neither heard nor understood by the entire command.

As an illustration of its successful use, the following is related:

"During a recent training period of the 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, the regiment was assembled in a natural amphitheatre for instruction on a forthcoming field maneuver. The problem consisted of flank guard action to culminate in a meeting engagement. The enemy was to be represented by flags and reconnaissance cars. The fire of small arms, artillery and hostile airplane fire was to be represented by the use of blank ammunition and aerial bombs.

"The regiment was formed in a semicircle. The amplifier (loud speaker) was placed on top of a motor car located on the flank, and faced, so that the voice was carried across the front and at an oblique angle toward the massed formation. (If the loud speaker is placed directly in front, the voice will 'rebound' and 'echo,' confusing the speaker. Placed on the ground, the sound waves are not carried with clarity. The speaker should stand in the rear of the amplifier, talk across the face of the 'mike' in a low distinct and clear voice.)

"By use of the loud speaker, every man was informed of the instructor's ideas. The necessity of passing information and instruction through several elements was elimi-

nated. Every officer and man had a feeling that a personal interest was being taken in the part he was to play. The attention of the soldier was undivided and even the horses were less restive because the method of conveying instruction was *impressive*. (The tone of the speaking voice can be given inflection and powers which will retain the constant interest of the listeners.) The field problem was to consist of six movements by the enemy, controlled by means of a large white flag used by the instructor. The men and flags employed to represent the enemy were put through a slow rehearsal before the assembled command. Both the purpose and significance of the five different colored flags, also all movements, were explained; likewise, the use of blanks and aerial bombs, use of key positions, and employment of reconnaissance cars was explained in detail through the loud speaker.

"The results of the maneuver clearly indicated that every man and unit commander knew what was expected and all missions were carried out and objectives reached without confusion. Although the critique covered all errors, yet every participant had a feeling that he was really an effective working part of the widespread operations. The loud speaker had served its purpose."

Again the amplifier was used to describe in detail a demonstration by the Machine Gun Troop of "going into action," before the assembled regiment. The attention of the men, and the information absorbed, was exceptional.

A Field Day, in which there were eleven mounted and five dismounted events, requiring two hours to "run off," was rated a complete success. We used a loud speaker loaned by a local oil company. The portable amplifier was not used because it only had a one-way direction. It was noticed, that, when the loud speaker began describing the events, the audience began to increase until the

entire command and many hundred civilians were watching the meet. All remained until the last contest was over. Every one spoke highly of the added interest created by use of the loud speaker.

For control, instruction and correction of units on the parade ground, drill field and field maneuver, and for many other purposes, the amplifier has unlimited opportunities. The command which has a portable amplifier outfit as a part of its active equipment has a great advantage in obtaining satisfactory results. It saves voice, energy, time, and messengers. It makes for positiveness; conveys definite ideas; and produces alertness on the part of the listener. Its use inculcates the feeling of a job well done.

A portable amplifier outfit consists of a compact case about the size of an "overnight bag" and a storage battery. Both articles may easily be conveyed by a soldier. The carrying case consists of two separate parts fastened together to make the unit. Mounted in the cover of the carrying case (which acts as a sounding board) is the loud speaker and extension cord which permits convenience over rather long distances for placing this part. The other half of the case contains the amplifier (tubes, etc.), two toggle switches, the hand four way microphone and extension cord. The instruments (complete, less battery) range in prices from \$12.00 to \$120.00. The one recommended for use with the cavalry costs about \$60.00. It is a self-contained unit having 3 plug connections; speaker, microphone and battery. It requires no technical knowledge for its operation. The purchase of one of these outfits, with money from the Regimental Fund, is highly recommended. It will be a splendid investment and pay happy and satisfactory "dividends" to all concerned.

1 1 1

## Will Rogers Memorial Rodeo, Colorado Springs, Colorado

World championship Will Rogers Memorial rodeo will be held Sept. 4, 5, and 6 on the Broadmoor polo field in conjunction with dedication of the already famous Will Rogers Shrine of the Sun which has been built on Cheyenne Mountain, half a mile above the rodeo grounds.

Pike's Peak association has secured Leonard Stroud, famous rodeo performer and director, to be in charge of the rodeo contests, which will be open to the world and for which thousands of dollars in cash prizes and trophies are being offered.

The three-day rodeo will feature championship contests in bronco riding, steer wrestling, wild Brama steer riding, team tying, calf roping, trick and fancy roping and riding, wild Brama bull chariot races, clowns, educated horses, trick mules, basketball on horseback, and many novelties. In addition there will be six exciting

horse races each afternoon.

The world's foremost cowboys and cowgirls will participate in the contests, which will be their method of memorializing the late Will Rogers, who was dean of the lariat as well as the contemporary comedians. It is proposed to make the Will Rogers Memorial rodeo an annual event.

The Will Rogers Shrine of the Sun was built by Spencer Penrose, outstanding Colorado Springs sportsman and friend of Mr. Rogers. It is now open to the public at intervals every day, although the dedication has been set for Labor-day week-end.

The rodeo and dedication will attract thousands from all parts of the nation. Special trains and motor caravans from California, Texas, Oklahoma, Missouri, Kansas, and Illinois are already planned.



# The Cavalry Unit, Peacock Military Academy

## The Only Preparatory School in Texas Offering Both Cavalry and Infantry Training

By Donaldson W. Peacock, 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry Reserve

WHILE the Peacock Military Academy of San Antonio, Texas, has been in continuous operation for forty-three years, first as a preparatory school and later as a military school for boys, it was not until three years ago that a cavalry unit was added.

Circumstances were ideal for the expansion. The school property is situated in the suburbs of San Antonio, and the surrounding, partly wooded hills offer cross-country advantages, such as natural barriers, streams, jumps, slides, trails, etc., not ordinarily found available in one locality for cavalry training. The climate is mild, and permits almost continuous outside training on the drill field or cross-country. Another advantage was the fact that no preparatory school in Texas was offering this desirable type of training, and today, Peacock Military Academy is the only preparatory school in Texas or any Gulf State offering the twofold benefit of both cavalry and infantry training. The Academy had then, as now, an excellent standing, which came from the management being carried on by members of a family rich in ideals and traditions. It is the oldest private school in Texas operating continuously under the same management. The Academy was founded in 1894 by Professor Wesley Peacock, Sr., and is now headed by Major Wesley Peacock, Jr., who was a commissioned officer in the 82d Field Artillery during the World War. Lieutenant Donaldson W. Peacock, 5th Cavalry, Cavalry-Reserve, is Commandant of Cadets and Cavalry Instructor. The Academy is recognized by the United States Government, through the War Department, under an act of April 27, 1914. (38 Stat. 370.)

Failing to secure an R.O.T.C. Cavalry Unit because none were available, but determined to offer its students cavalry training and recreational riding anyway, the Academy started out on a small scale by buying enough horses for one squad and renting an additional eight horses from a nearby riding stable each day during the drill period. The problem of obtaining McClellan saddles, bridles, blankets, etc., was solved by purchasing them at different army salvage stores in the city. From this meager beginning, the Cavalry Unit has been expanded through the purchase of additional horses and new equipment into one forming a full-strength rifle platoon. (See cut.) This platoon is sufficient to meet the needs of the Academy, which operates under a limited enrollment of one hundred and twenty-five boys, including the Junior School.

The methods of instruction are those of the United States Cavalry Service. The instruction includes the care

of animals, stable management, saddling, correct seat and reins, use of the aids, weight, voice, close and extended order, cross-country riding, jumping, and other varied and interesting instruction in keeping with the circumstance. The drill period takes place in the morning, so it is possible to have daily equitation classes and cross-country riding in the afternoon, following the scholastic sessions. The afternoon classes are open to infantrymen, thereby broadening the scope of the Academy's training in horsemanship.

The highest ambition of each member of the cavalry is to become a "Trooper," meaning that he has not only met certain requirements in horsemanship and the care of his mount and equipment, but that he is also able to do certain dismounted drills and a specified amount of infantry training. Once he has obtained his designation of "Trooper," the cadet is permitted to wear a yellow bar ribbon on his dress uniform, and has the privilege of taking a young lady friend horseback riding upon Sunday afternoons.

The Cavalry Unit is known as the "Peacock Lancers." Regulation lances and pennants are carried during public appearances. These occasions could be rather frequent, as San Antonio is a winter resort and therefore a city of conventions and parades, but participation is ordinarily limited to the more formal, annual affairs, such as the Fiesta de San Jacinto, which takes place in April of each year. Last year, the Peacock Lancers acted as an escort of honor to Governor Allred of Texas in the famous Battle of Flowers parade, which takes place during the fiesta week. In addition to this honor, the Peacock Lancers won the first prize in the Cavalcade Section, in which they competed with many other mounted units, including an army entry.

Other public appearances occur during the annual Armistice Day parade—which is an elaborate affair, on account of the numerous army posts stationed in and about the city—the annual horse show, and the Academy Dress Parades, which take place each Sunday afternoon in the spring, from Easter until the end of the school term. One day is set aside in the spring, for the official army inspection.

The Academy has been able to develop some good future cavalrymen through the Junior Equitation instruction. Most of the cadets in the Junior School are very much interested in horses, and through instruction in the elementary phases of riding, are able to progress more rapidly than is the usual case, when they are old enough to enter the Senior School and become eligible for the Cavalry Unit. The Junior Equitation group is composed



*Cavalry Scenes, Peacock Military Academy, San Antonio, Texas*

of cadets in the age group from nine to fourteen. Some of them become efficient enough to take part in the horse shows before they are old enough to enter the Senior Class in Equitation. All of them attain a degree of skill in the handling and care of their horses, as well as get the exercise so vitally needed by a growing boy.

Many improvements have recently been made upon the stables, including a picket line for thirty horses—modeled after those used at nearby Fort Sam Houston—and a new corral fence built of sturdy cedar posts and two-inch gal-

vanized pipe. The posts are painted green and tipped with white paint, while the pipes are treated with an aluminum finish. The general plan of the stable and saddle house has won the commendation of inspecting Army officers.

Cavalry-Reserve Officers living in San Antonio, have been extended an invitation to ride at the Academy, and many have taken advantage of the offer. Visitors are cordially invited to visit the Academy, and see why it is becoming known as "The West Point of Texas."



# THE CAVALRY SCHOOL DIGEST OF INFORMATION



## Defects in Heavy Machine Gun Training and a Proposed Revision

Prepared by Captain Paul M. Robinett, Cavalry

### PRESENT TRAINING

Present training with the heavy machine gun is prescribed in Basic Field Manual, Volume III, Part Three, Chapter 2, Part Five, Chapter 3 and Part Six. It consists of:

- a. Mechanical Training.
- b. Marksmanship.
  - (1) Preparatory Exercises.
  - (a) Sighting and Aiming Exercises.

- (b) Position Exercises.
- (c) Sight-Setting and Laying Exercises.
- (d) Manipulation Exercises.
- (e) Examination of Men before Starting Range Practice.
- (2) Range Practice.
  - (a) Instruction Practice.

TABLE I

RANGE	TIME	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
1000 Inches	No Limit	30	MG-A	Fixed (3 exercises).
Do.	Do.	35	MG-A	Adjustment (1 exercise).
Do.	Do.	80	MG-B	Searching (2 exercises).
Do.	Do.	120	MG-C	Traversing (3 exercises).
Do.	Do.	80	MG-D	Oblique Traverse (2 exercises).
Do.	Do.	300	MG-E	Fixed, Searching and Traversing (2 exercises).

- (b) Preliminary Practice.

TABLE II

RANGE	TIME	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
1000 Inches	3 Minutes	150	MG-E	Fixed, Searching and Traversing.

- (c) Record Practice.—Twice over preliminary practice.



- c. Technique of Fire.
- d. Combat Practice Firing.
- e. Antiaircraft Fire.

## DEFECTS IN PRESENT TRAINING

- a. Mechanical Training.—None.
- b. Marksmanship.

- (1) All firing is at range of only 1,000 inches. The gunner comes to combat practice firing without any previous practice in firing at the type of targets (silhouettes) encountered at combat ranges. In the Goodrich Trophy Test for Machine Gun Troops held in 1932, the percentage of hits was very low, which shows that the present training does not make good combat shots. The soldier does not take the same interest in combat practice firing that he does in the course for which he is paid. Firing at 1,000-inches provides no training in the effect of wind. Observation of a shot group at 1,000-inches is not the equivalent of determining the center of impact of a beaten zone. Adjustment of fire on the 1,000-inch target, where one mil change in elevation or deflection at the gun will move the shot group one inch on the target, does not impress on the gunner that the same

change in elevation on the gun will move the center of impact of the beaten zone about 65-yards at 600-yards. All of the above is part of the necessary equipment of a good combat gunner.

- (2) There is no moving target firing, ground or aerial, in the marksmanship course. The former, which is highly important in these days of mechanization, is not covered in any training.
- (3) No use is made of the caliber .22 machine gun, recently issued.
- c. Technique of Fire.—No combat instruction at moving targets, ground or aerial, is included.
- d. Combat Practice Firing.—This practice in peacetime is so restricted due to necessary safety precautions that its value is very doubtful. The mission of machine guns is the support of rifle units. In the absence of these units, machine gun training with ball ammunition is reduced to training in technique of fire.
- e. Antiaircraft Fire.—This practice as prescribed requires so much time, personnel and ground as to be impractical to carry out at most posts.

## PROPOSED TRAINING

- a. Mechanical Training.
- b. Marksmanship.
- (1) Basic Course.

- (a) Preparatory Exercises.—Same as present course.
- (b) Small-bore Practice.—(No qualification.)
- (i) Instruction Practice.

RANGE	TIME	CALIBER	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
500 Inches	No Limit	.22	80	SB-MG-A	Fixed.
Do.	Do.	.22	80	SB-MG-B	Searching.
Do.	Do.	.22	120	SB-MG-C	Traversing.
Do.	Do.	.22	80	SB-MG-D	Oblique.
Do.	Do.	.22	150	SB-MG-E	Fixed, Traversing and Searching.

## (ii) Record Practice.

RANGE	TIME	CALIBER	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
500 Inches	3 Minutes	.22	150	SB-MG-E	Fixed, Traversing and Searching.

## (c) Caliber .30 Practice (Qualification for Second Class Gunner only).

## (i) Instruction Practice.

RANGE	TIME	CALIBER	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
1000 Inches	3 Minutes	.30	150	MG-E	Fixed, Traversing and Searching.

## (ii) Record Practice.—Same as instruction practice.

## (2) Advanced Course.

## (a) Preparatory Exercises.

- (i) Position Exercises, Moving Targets.
- (ii) Aiming Exercises, Moving Targets.
- (iii) Loading and Tracking Exercises.

- (iv) Examination of Men before Starting Range Practice.
- (b) Small-bore Practice. (No Qualification.)
- (i) Instruction Practice.

RANGE	TIME	CALIBER	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
500 Inches	No. Limit	.22	25	SB-M-3	Fixed, 1 Lead, Right and Left.
Do.	Do.	.22	25	SB-M-3	Fixed, 2 Leads, Right and Left.
Do.	Target travels 10	.22	25	SB-M-3	Moving, 2 Leads, Right.
Do.	feet in 5 seconds	.22	25	SB-M-3	Moving, 2 Leads, Left.

## (ii) Record Practice.

RANGE	TIME	CALIBER	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
500 Inches	Target travels 10	.22	25	SB-M-3	Moving, 2 Leads, Right.
Do.	feet in 5 seconds	.22	25	SB-M-3	Moving, 2 Leads, Left.

(c) Caliber .30 Practice. (Qualification for Expert Gunner and First Class Gunner only.)

(i) Instruction Practice.

RANGE	TIME	CALIBER	SHOTS	TARGET	TYPE OF FIRE
600 yards	4 minutes	.30	250, of which 25 are tracer	20 E (4 groups of 5, each area 5'x5')	Traversing.
750 yards				20 E (area 5'x30')	Oblique.
900 and 1000 yards				40 E (each area 5'x30')	Searching.
500 yards	Target travels 50 yards in 5 seconds	.30	50, of which 10 are tracer	M (6'x3' oblong moving at right angles to line of fire)	Moving, one run L to R; one run R to L.

(ii) Record Practice.—Same as instruction practice.

c. Technique of Fire.—Same as present training, except that field firing against ground moving targets (railroad target or target towed by motor truck) and against aerial moving targets (towed by airplane) should be added. Combat practice firing and anti-aircraft firing as separate subjects to be eliminated.

#### ADVANTAGES OF THE PROPOSED SYSTEM

a. Mechanical Training.—No change from present system. Regulations should be kept up to date to cover improvements and changes in matériel.

b. Marksmanship.—

- (1) The division into a basic course and an advanced course, which at first glance may appear to be complicated, is in reality simple and has many obvious advantages. Recruits can be kept at short range fire at stationary targets as long as necessary to qualify. After qualification they take up advanced work without repeating the basic work. When qualified in the advanced course they will be real gunners.
- (2) The caliber .22 machine gun is utilized in all small-bore practice.
- (3) All small-bore practice is at 500-inches instead of 1,000-inches, as most indoor ranges are of the shorter length.
- (4) Small-bore practice in both basic and advanced courses includes all types of fire used later in caliber .30 practice.
- (5) Caliber .30 practice consists of short range firing for the basic course only and combat distance firing for the advanced course only.
- (6) Moving target firing is included in the advanced course.

(7) Tracer ammunition is utilized in the advanced course.

(8) Most of the targets used are now available and the new ones recommended are the same as those recommended for the proposed revision of rifle marksmanship (memorandum to Assistant Commandant, dated 27 January, 1936.)

(9) Ammunition expenditure for both courses is about the same as for the present course. For either basic or advanced course, ammunition is less.

(10) Much better combat shots will be developed under the advanced course than under the present one.

(11) Qualification will be harder than at present, which is desirable. The present course is so easy, especially with the new all-purpose cradle (Tripod, Model 1917 A1), that it takes a much higher degree of training to make an expert rifleman than it does an expert machine gunner.

(12) The proposed courses parallel closely the course for the light machine gun.

c. Technique of fire includes field firing under all conditions, including moving target firing, ground and aerial. Ammunition should be allotted for this purpose.

d. Combat practice firing is eliminated. Less the presence of rifle units, it is included under Technique of Fire.

e. Antiaircraft fire, as well as fire against moving ground targets, is included in its component parts under Marksmanship and Technique of Fire, where it properly belongs.

EDITOR'S NOTE: Immediately following is a statement on this same subject from an officer in the field.

1 1 1

### Revise Present Machine Gun Qualification Course

*By Major Darrow Menoher*

THIS ARTICLE with regard to the Browning Machine Gun (Heavy) qualification course is being submitted for publication in *The Cavalry Journal* to stimulate the making of real Machine Gunners. It is hoped that this article will be accepted by those who read it in the spirit in which it is written.

I don't intend to quote any regulations as to the present qualification course because those who are interested in the gun know these regulations and what is required. I am trying to make this article as short and to the point as possible. I am therefore, going to give my opinion with regard to the subject (and anyone who doesn't agree with these opinions can take it out on me). Next, I intend to cover certain facts and then finally wind up with a few recommendations.

To begin with, the Browning Machine Gun is as perfect a piece of machinery as has ever been invented. However, like any mechanical device which has the terrific wear and tear, not only through the mechanical functioning of the gun when in use, but by the constant hammering it gets in the Cavalry service plus the hundreds of individuals who think they are machine gunners constantly playing with it, the gun is bound to wear.

The present qualification course deals purely with the mechanical functioning of the gun. A boy seven or eight years old who can set his sites, lay his gun, and squeeze the trigger can qualify as a machine gunner as the situation now exists.

The Browning Gun when in perfect shape, with all adjustments perfect, sitting on a "T" base, supported by sandbags, with everybody and his brother around to offer advice, is naturally going to function better than a gun dropped off a horse and set up in a hurry by men who are sweating and tired in the face of any enemy.

Is an individual, because he can sit behind a machine gun and shoot effectively at a target a thousand inches from him, in any sense of the word a machine gunner?

Some one made the remark at one time that, "anyone who places his faith in a mechanical contrivance is of no more service to his country than the mechanical contrivance in which he places his faith." Therefore the gunner has to know what to do when the gun goes out, and how to use it tactically.

We are not going to have ideal conditions when we go to war. Any man who thinks that he is going to have the best of equipment, ammunition, and much luck is just dumb.

Why not play the game under conditions that will probably confront us when the whistle blows? I suggest

that the present qualification course be based on the following:

A. Let 20% of the total qualification be the score on the thousand-inch range as it now stands.

B. 30% of the total qualification be based on the individual's ability to field strip the gun, pack it properly, replace worn or broken parts, and the care and cleaning of the gun.

C. The remaining fifty per cent of the total qualification to be a field range course with conditions as they actually exist on the ground; with a time limit; on a fixed target, including skirmish line, a column target, and possibly an oblique target.

To go back to the beginning of this article I would like to correct one statement, and that is, that I am not the only one of the opinion that the present course does not make machine gunners. I have talked it over in the past few years with others, who are admirers of this weapon, and I believe they agree with me that they would like to see it realistically employed.

1 1 1

### The Semi-Automatic Rifle

*(Prepared by 1st Lieutenant F. D. Merrill, 9th Cavalry, Department of Weapons and Matériel.)*

THE semi-automatic rifle or self-loading rifle is now receiving serious consideration as an arm for the individual soldier. This is a relatively new thought in our army, yet such a thought was advanced in the Mexican Army in 1891. In this year General Mondragon of the Mexican Army became convinced that the standard type of military rifle was not the ideal type. The weapon with which he was most familiar was the 7-mm. Mauser, an excellent military arm. General Mondragon took this Mauser and attempted to improve it. All of his efforts were directed towards reducing the manual operation required of the soldier to a minimum. By 1908 he had perfected a modification of the 7-mm. Mauser rifle. This modification, known as the Mondragon rifle, was a gas operated semi-automatic weapon using a ten round clip. A few of these rifles were manufactured and used in the Mexican Army.

In 1899 and 1900 Germany constructed and tested models of semi-automatic rifles which were conversions of her standard Mauser rifles. In 1900 the Australian Mannlicher rifle was modified experimentally to a gas operated semi-automatic type. During the same year Italy developed the semi-automatic Rigotti rifle and Denmark produced the Schouboe self-loader. All of these rifles were generally unsatisfactory but there were the foundations upon which later satisfactory guns were based.

In 1910 France conducted extensive experiments to determine the value of the self-loading rifle. A service rifle was actually designed and produced in limited numbers. Unfortunately, this rifle was not adapted for the standard rifle ammunition. Based on the results of test it was definitely decided by the French War Office that a weapon



of this type would be adopted. The outbreak of the war in 1914 found this project still in an experimental form and it was impossible to place it in effect with the nation involved in a major war. The idea was not given up and during the early days of the war we find the American Winchester automatic rifle, of the common sporting type, being used as a supplementary arm for aviation units. During 1915 the need for a semi-automatic rifle became evident and weapons of the 1910 type were manufactured and placed in service. As these were not generally satisfactory, improvements and modifications were made on the basic idea which culminated in the production of the "RSC" rifle in 1917. This rifle was issued to some infantry units at the rate of 16 per rifle company. It had been produced under the exigencies of war and proved to be unreliable and too heavy for an individual arm. These defects were corrected and the Model 1918 semi-automatic rifle developed and sent to the front for test. This rifle was received with favor by the infantry and put into production but no quantity was available to troops until after the Armistice.

Germany investigated and used a few semi-automatic rifles during the war but there is no evidence that any serious consideration was given to universal use of this type of arm. During 1917 some Mausers were converted to the Mondragon type of self-loader and used to a limited extent. However, there is reason to believe that Germany would have made a greater effort in this respect had it not required such a severe strain on already hard pressed arms plants.

As far as can be determined the British government investigated the self-loading rifle during the war, but did not believe that the equilibrium of their manufacturing program should be disturbed for an untried type of weapon. Except for experimental models no semi-automatic rifles were produced in England during the war.

Italy made extensive tests of a self-loading rifle. The Revelli-Beretta carbine was actually placed in service. As this weapon employed a pistol cartridge it should be classed with the sub-machine gun rather than with the rifle. However, it employed the principle of self-loading for an individual arm and must be considered. Later models of the Revelli-Beretta were constructed using the rifle cartridge but the extent of their use in combat is not known.

In general, all major nations except the United States and Great Britain employed some form of semi-automatic rifle as an arm for the individual soldier during the World War. Both the United States and Great Britain considered such a weapon following the war.

It has been stated by military writers that no major nation can engage in any future war of any magnitude without the semi-automatic rifle. Since this type of arm is now receiving serious consideration by all nations it is advisable to consider the criticisms which are directed against it.

The semi-automatic rifle is subject to three possible criticisms.

1. *The semi-automatic rifle is more complicated than the bolt-action rifle and is less rugged.*

This argument has considerable merit when applied to early types of rifle. There is no doubt that any semi-automatic rifle must be more complicated than a bolt-action magazine rifle. However, modern ingenuity has reduced complication to a minimum and the latest types can be easily cared for by the average soldier. The experiences of the World War show that the average American readily acquires facility in the handling of mechanical devices. This has been corroborated at the Cavalry School where it has been found that any cavalry soldier can be trained without difficulty in the operation and care of the semi-automatic rifle in the field. The question of ruggedness has been solved by our Ordnance Department in a very satisfactory manner. Tests conducted at the Cavalry School on the rifle developed by the Ordnance Department indicated that a high degree of ruggedness and reliability had been secured. These tests included carrying the rifle in gun boots on long marches and maneuvers, exposing the gun to adverse conditions of dirt and sand and firing for prolonged periods during which the guns became greatly overheated. Under these tests, which were made as rigorous as possible, no essential parts of the guns failed and criticisms were of a minor nature only.

2. *The ammunition supply for semi-automatic rifles will be difficult.*

This argument has been advanced against every improved type of weapon. Machine guns were classed as special weapons prior to the World War. They were intentionally kept to a few guns per unit so that the ammunition problem would not be acute. English cavalry regiments in 1914 had as few as two guns. Commandant Reffye discussing machine-gun tactics as originally developed in the French army stated that the "mitrailleuse" were to come into action with the artillery. The first war between regular armies in which machine guns were used in large numbers on both sides was the Russo-Japanese War in 1904. Following this war the German army increased the number of machine guns enormously as their observers had reported that a few machine guns could replace large bodies of infantry where fire alone was necessary. The German machine guns forced other nations to increase their own guns early in the World War and the machine gun emerged from the war as the supreme weapon of the battlefield. One French author has made the sweeping assertion that at no time during the war was a French machine-gun unit rendered ineffective by reason of an inadequate ammunition supply. Unquestionably the problem of ammunition supply was complicated by the machine gun, yet the reasons for this complication were willingly accepted on account of the value of the weapon. The modern tendency is to attempt a solution of the supply problem rather than do away with essential weapons. It is true that the ammunition supply problem must be considered anew if the

semi-automatic rifle is adopted but there is no reason why it cannot be solved.

3. *The semi-automatic rifle has such a high rate of fire that the soldier will waste ammunition.*

This argument dates back to the first breech-loading rifle. It has been advanced against every improvement in the individual arm of the soldier. There is without doubt a greater possibility of wasting ammunition but ammunition is always wasted in combat. One historic incident has been repeatedly used as representing the highest effect ever obtained by rifle fire in combat. This is the action at Colenso on December 15, 1899, during the Boer War in South Africa. The casualties were on the ratio of one to every 600 rounds of rifle ammunition fired. This appears to be a large expenditure of ammunition for the results obtained, yet is one of the best examples of the effect of rifle fire. Naturally, it is desirable to decrease the waste of ammunition in combat but the fact remains that an enormous expenditure must be made to produce a single casualty. Weapons are adopted on their ability to create casualties rather than on their ability to conserve ammunition. If the object of battle is to conserve ammunition, going back to the muzzle loader would be logical. Tests at the Cavalry School have indicated that the semi-automatic rifle has double the combat efficiency of the magazine rifle based on a pure ability to cause casualties within a given time. The same tests also indicate that there is an excessive rate of fire for any weapon and that ammunition will be wasted when these rates are reached. This reduces the wastage of ammunition of any weapon to the matter of training. A poorly trained unit can waste ammunition if armed with muzzle loaders. The problem can now be stated concisely as being the question whether or not a weapon is to be judged on what poorly trained men can possibly do with it, or the combat effort of the weapon in the hands of troops of some training.

In all tests conducted at the Cavalry School the semi-automatic rifle has been successful in all major considerations. This modern weapon is available in a dependable and rugged form which can be maintained by the average soldier without great difficulty. The development of this type of weapon is not the sudden rise of a new thought but one which originally appeared in 1891 and is now appearing in a highly perfected form. It increases the fire effect of riflemen. In the cavalry it will increase the fire effect without decreasing the mobility or adding to the present complicity of pack transportation. Therefore it may be concluded that the semi-automatic rifle is the next logical step in the development of individual weapon and should be given careful consideration by the cavalry service.

## The Effectiveness of Cavalry Weapons Against Armored Vehicles, Low-Flying Aircraft and Machine Guns in Combat

Prepared by 1st Lt. F. D. Merrill, Cavalry, Department of Weapons and Matériel, The Cavalry School.

"Cavalry must be fully trained and imbued with the determination to protect itself against hostile aerial or mechanized attacks without reliance on special units or other arms." This statement taken from the text *Cavalry Weapons and Matériel* expresses briefly the doctrine of antitank and antiaircraft defense.

The scope of this discussion will be limited to estimating the results cavalry may expect to obtain against moving targets and machine gun nests with the weapons with which it is now equipped from a standpoint of being able to hit the target.

In order to make this estimate, the firing conducted at the Cavalry School during the period 1934-1936 has been used to illustrate the points brought out in the discussion. While some of this firing was done by highly qualified gunners the majority was done by school classes who have a minimum of preparatory instruction. It is realized that the figures obtained would be materially changed had the firing been done under combat conditions but they do represent a fair comparison between the various weapons.

TABLE I

### ANTIAIRCRAFT FIRE

Towed Sleeve Target—Speed 100 m.p.h.—Standard 30-foot target.

Elevation of target—50-200 yards.

Range to Target—200-300 yards.

Horizontal, Vertical, and Oblique Flights.

Weapons	Rounds Fired	Hits	% Hits
Rifle (1903) . . . . .	11,370	1,090	9.6
Pistol . . . . .	1,336	37	2.7
L.M.G. . . . .	12,580	985	7.8
H.M.G. . . . .	2,540	128	5.0

Attack aviation will travel at a speed of approximately 200 miles per hour and is not apt to attack unless at least partial surprise is possible. Considering these factors it is obvious that the time cavalry can fire against such an attack is very small. On the road cavalry cannot expect any weapons to be in continuously effective action against attack aviation over 30 seconds. Pack weapons having 10 seconds of fire will be especially favored by the laws of probability.

Based on 30 seconds of fire for rifles and 10 seconds for machine guns, fire against towed targets gave the following results:

Rifle—1 hit per 5 rifles firing.

Pistol—1 hit per 10 pistols firing.

L.M.G.—2 hits per gun.

H.M.G.—2 hits per gun.

L.M.G. on Scout Cars—5 hits per gun.

In combat, attack aviation would have the advantages of surprise, and a speed at least twice that of the sleeve

target all of which would greatly reduce the probable hits. However as an evaluation of the weapons it may be stated with reasonable assurance that:

1. The pistol has some value against low-flying planes, but the effect is not great except at very close ranges.
2. The machine guns are inherently the best weapons for use against low-flying planes because of rapidity of fire but they take longer to go into action than riflemen and consequently may not be as effective.
3. The concentration of all available rifle and machine gun fire is the best positive protection for cavalry against low-flying planes.
4. Scout cars have a high degree of efficiency in fire on low-flying planes.
5. All weapons have an efficiency which varies directly with the efficiency of the air scouts in giving them time to go into action.

TABLE II

## MOVING GROUND TARGET

Speed 15-20 m.p.h.

Range 500-800 yards.

Target size 4 x 12 feet.

Target moving across front of gun position.

Weapon	Rounds Fired	Hits	% Hits
Rifle .....	7,450	372	4.9
M1 Rifle .....	2,228	87	3.9
Cal. .50 MG .....	2,740	168	6.1
Cal. .30 MG .....	19,480	1,136	5.8
L.M.G. ....	13,760	824	5.9
37-mm. Gun .....	582	64	11.0

Range 600-1,300 yards.

Weapon	Rounds Fired	Hits	% Hits
Rifle .....	1,250	28	2.2
M1 Rifle .....	2,440	43	1.7
Cal. .50 MG .....	3,160	184	5.8
Cal. .30 MG .....	1,280	23	1.7
L.M.G. ....	1,756	38	2.1
37-mm. Gun .....	493	52	10.5

Range 700-1,400 yards.

Target speed 25-45 m.p.h.

Target size—3½ x 8 feet.

Weapon	Rounds Fired	Hits	% Hits
Rifle .....	4,238	120	2.8
M1 Rifle .....	7,482	192	2.5
Cal. .50 MG .....	6,987	495	7.1
Cal. .30 MG .....	11,482	422	3.6
L.M.G. ....	9,760	408	4.1
37-mm. Gun .....	480	62	12.9

(These figures are higher than preceding due to increased proficiency and experience of gunners.)

Range 100-700 yards.

Target moving towards gun position at 25 m.p.h.

Target size—6 foot frontage, 4 feet high.

Weapon	Rounds Fired	Hits	% Hits
Cal. .50 MG .....	2,928	1,760	60
L.M.G. ....	2,912	2,180	75

Evaluating these figures impartially and considering available ammunition the following conclusions are drawn:

1. Caliber .30 weapons should open fire on moving ground targets at ranges under 800 yards. At greater ranges accuracy drops rapidly.
2. The 37-mm. gun is extremely accurate against moving ground targets but has insufficient ammunition and too little effect with present service ammunition to be used regularly for this purpose. With AP shell it would be an excellent antitank weapon.
3. The caliber .50 machine gun is extremely accurate against moving ground targets and accuracy is not effected by range considerations.
4. Any mechanized unit moving directly against a machine gun in position will receive a large number of hits.

TABLE III

## ANTI-MACHINE GUN FIRE

Target—2 x 3 feet.

Ranges—900-2,000 yards.

Weapon	Rounds Fired	Effective Shots	% Effective
Cal. 50 MG .....	2,900	1,820	62.5
37-mm. Gun .....	1,540	1,210	78.6

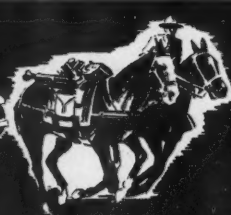
(820 rounds with 37-mm. gun fired from position defilade.)

Considering accuracy of fire there is little choice between either the 37-mm. gun or the Cal. .50 MG. Considering ammunition the 37-mm. gun has marked superiority over the Cal. .50 MG due to the explosive shell used. The conclusions drawn from this table are:

1. The 37-mm. gun is the proven primary weapon for use against Machine Guns.
2. In emergencies and in the absence of 37-mm. guns the Cal. .50 machine gun may be used against located machine guns.

As a general conclusion from the entire series of firing it may be stated that the results obtained at the Cavalry School indicates that all present weapons have sufficient inherent accuracy to get a reasonable number of hits on any of the types of targets considered. It has also been demonstrated that average cavalry gunners and marksmen can employ these weapons effectively after a reasonable amount of practice and instruction.





## THE EDITOR'S SADDLE

### Distinguished Contributor

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL is particularly fortunate in being able to publish an article from the pen of a foremost American soldier. MAJOR GENERAL JOHN L. HINES, Ret., former Chief of Staff, United States Army, needs no introduction to the army. His "Comments on War" furnish much food for thought to future leaders of higher units. General Hines may well speak with authority on the responsibility of high command. Arriving in France as a Lieutenant Colonel on General Pershing's staff, he soon requested command duty. In quick succession he commanded, in battle, a regiment, brigade, division, and a corps. The CAVALRY JOURNAL is indeed proud to publish this message from a "Combat General."

### "Cavalry Combat"

FOR EXAMPLES of unchanging principles of war, military students have sought the conduct of and execution by the great captains. For examples of the employment and leadership of cavalry, we have gone, for the past several decades, principally to the American Civil War.

Since the Civil War, under the modern industrial age, the means of making war have taken tremendous strides. We are now fortunate in the possession of a book, *Cavalry Combat*, giving, in picturesque detail, the outstanding operations by small cavalry units under modern conditions of warfare. Napoleon stated that no army was better than its average battalion. So, today, no large cavalry unit is better than its average squadron. The division plans and supplies; the squadron fights. Here, under one cover, are compiled the problems, the actions, the leadership and combat of small cavalry units in many of the theatres of operations in the World War. Here one is struck by the magnitude of that conflict; the widespread areas of combat; the various conditions of terrain, and climate; and the opposing forces that fought over the major portion of the continent of Europe and a large portion of the continent of Asia.

See cavalry in action in reconnaissance, security, attack, counterattack, pursuit, defense, filling a gap in the line and generally fulfilling its time honored missions under modern conditions.

To fight war, one must know war: Here is cavalry in war at its best.

No cavalry officer should deny himself the pleasure and profit of becoming familiar with the stirring and instructive episodes of cavalry in the World War.

Today, order your copy of *Cavalry Combat*.

### Retiring Editor



*Captain Charles S. Miller, Cavalry*

FOR the past two years, Captain Charles S. Miller has served as Secretary and Treasurer of The United States Cavalry Association and as Editor of The CAVALRY JOURNAL. Under his able management, both enterprises have experienced "happy days." The membership of The Cavalry Association has been practically doubled during that period. The CAVALRY JOURNAL has been blessed with the addition of many new and absorbing features.

It will be with regret that the cavalry arm views his transfer to other duties. His successful stewardship and unflinching cooperation are appreciated.

### "Letters to the Editor"

ARTICLE III of the Constitution, The United States Cavalry Association, reads as follows: "The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster

the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of The United States."

The CAVALRY JOURNAL is the medium through which the Cavalry Association executes this function. Its mission is the exchange and dissemination of professional data of timely interest and significance to cavalymen. Perchance, the material printed in The JOURNAL may, in the past, have followed a series of decided cycles. That is, several issues may have been devoted to marksmanship and musketry; then a consecutive number to war experiences and accounts of battles; others almost exclusively to the horse. One man's meat is another man's poison. The final judge is the reader.

An article is printed usually from the point of view of general interest, human interest, professional interest, or the dissemination of new thought. It is possible that a single article may create a variety of opinions; some favorable, others to the contrary.

In order that the cavalry, as a whole, may have the benefit of honest corroboration and criticism of any published feature, or comment on any other subject, it is intended to initiate a page in The JOURNAL devoted to "LETTERS TO THE EDITOR."

Your views on any subject, particularly on cavalry or The CAVALRY JOURNAL, are sincerely solicited.

### Cavalry School Visits Fort Knox

THE article under the foregoing title includes many analytical features of great interest to all cavalry students. This article was compiled by Colonel Lininger, Assistant Commandant of The Cavalry School and incorporates many views of Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, the Commandant.

The final portion of this narrative, devoted to an analysis of the employment of cavalry, is particularly recommended to all who seek doctrines on the employment of both horse and mechanized cavalry.

### Position Available for a Retired Mounted N.C.O.

THE EDITOR is in receipt of the following communication:

"New Jersey Cadet Cavalry Unit requires the services of a retired mounted sergeant or warrant officer thoroughly familiar with horses, preferably one with a Reserve Commission, who is qualified to teach equitation, cavalry drill, and to handle the paper work, including personnel records. Must be sober, smart, and soldierly in appearance and in the performance of his duties, and thoroughly reliable. This is an unusual opportunity in congenial surroundings for the right man.

"Reply with complete military history, qualifications, and names and addresses of commanding officers for the

past ten years; also age, weight, height, color, religion, nationality, and a recent photograph in uniform, dated, to Commandant, Junior Cavalry of America, Suite 1700, 84 William Street, New York.

### Cavalry in the Foreign Press

THE contents of The JOURNAL under this subject are of great current interest. The normal purpose of this feature is to report the latest developments of foreign cavalry, particularly on the lines of organization, employment, and doctrines. Comments from this source in this issue cover a large geographical field and refer in detail to the latest conclusions on organization and employment of cavalry in several European countries.

### Membership

THE membership of The CAVALRY JOURNAL has reached a most satisfactory figure. However, it is noted that there are a few isolated members of the regular cavalry who are not now members of The Cavalry Association.

The most active interest in the Association, probably, is found among the personnel of the National Guard. The officers of a large number of National Guard cavalry units now subscribe 100% to The CAVALRY JOURNAL.

The greatest field for new membership dwells with the cavalry officers of the Organized Reserves. It is believed that every member of The Cavalry Association, generally, finds The CAVALRY JOURNAL a sound professional investment. It is hoped that an increasingly larger number will come to the same conclusion.

### "A Carrier for Projector M1 and Signals"

FOLLOWING the standardization of the Projector M1 and Signals, the Cavalry Board undertook the development of a suitable carrier.

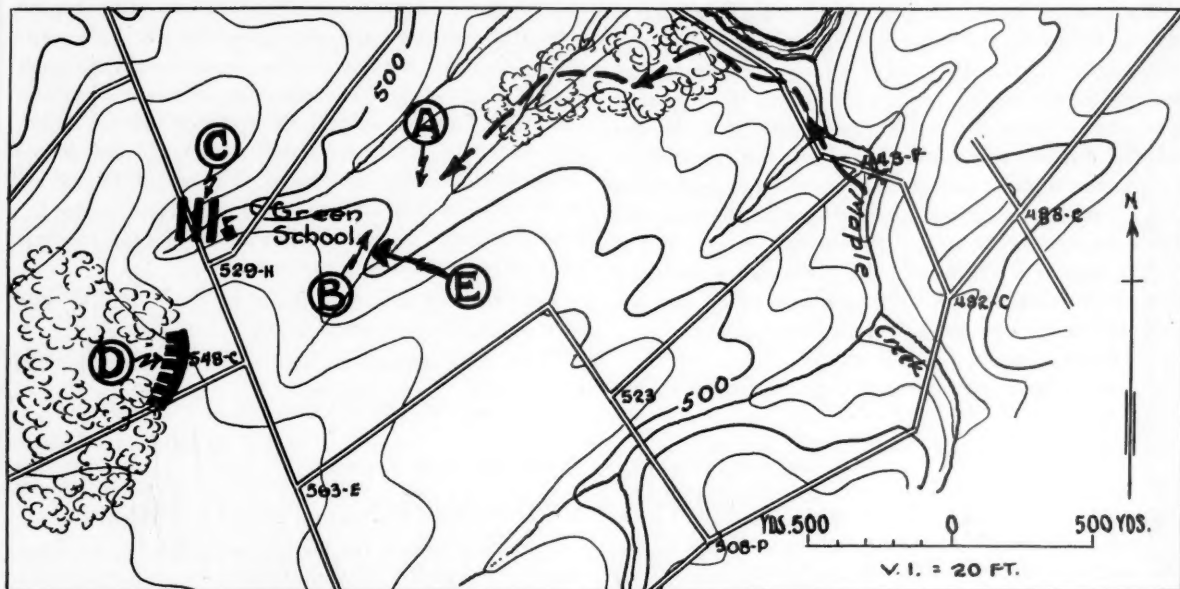
Ordinarily, the employment of pyrotechnics by horsed elements is contemplated under dismounted conditions. Therefore, the carrier should be suitable for use by a dismounted man. Furthermore, the carrier should be adaptable to the scout car or other type of vehicle. Certainly the carrier should be so constructed as to be easily carried by a mounted man.

Under the foregoing needs, a suitable canvas carrier was developed. However, in view of the immense number of surplus and available modified carriers, such as infantry packs, grain bags, feed bags, etc., it was found inadvisable to standardize, for issue, a carrier for the limited number of projectors authorized for the cavalry.

For the present, it will be necessary for all organizations to utilize improvised carriers.



## What Would You Do?



### SITUATION

"Now that you two have started this little discussion on the use of machine guns in the exercise today," said young L. M. Gunn, "how about a short and succinct account of what us little field soldiers did this morning?"

"O. K.," replied H. M. Gunn, "give us the situation, and I'll bet you a belt of M-1 ammunition to a box of empties, that I give you a solution. Commence firing."

"I was in the light-machine-gun platoon of I Troop," said L. M., "which was part of the maneuvering force. Lemme have that map of yours and I'll show you the set-up."

"We moved under cover of Maple Creek, thence through the woods to A. As our covering detachment came up to the crest of the hill at B it signalled: 'Enemy in sight large numbers.' Major Upan Attem, our squadron commander, galloped forward and observed one hostile troop halted mounted, in column of platoons, just west of the schoolhouse at C. He also saw a small hostile force of Reds in a dismounted position in the eastern edge of the woods at D. Major Upan Attem then issued orders to his troop commanders, who had just joined him on the crest of the ridge and who could observe the enemy troops:

"We attack mounted at once.

"Troops I and K (less light-machine-gun platoons), under Captain Ian Kaye, enemy at that schoolhouse. (C)

"Light-machine-gun platoons, Troops I and K, Lieutenant Goodshott commanding, open fire on enemy in those woods' (pointing to woods at D).

"He issued a few other instructions, but as they did not concern me, I don't remember what they were.

"And so, Lieutenant Goodshott, *pro tem.*, I now turn over the command of the light-machine-gun platoons of Troops I and K to you. There are the situation and orders. Keep in mind that the situation confronting Major Upan Attem precluded anything but a hasty observation, quick decision, and brief orders necessary only to commit the troops to a mounted attack. The advantage in this situation obviously is with the side which gets going first. The major's order was very short and contained only the information necessary for coordinating the attack.

"There it is, my boy, in a nutshell. Mobility and fire power," concluded L. M. Gunn, "and inasmuch as you are the fire power in this case,

WHAT WOULD YOU DO?

(For solution, turn the page)



## A SOLUTION AND DISCUSSION

H. M. Gunn, alias Lieutenant Goodshott, gazed intently at the map for a few second, and then addressed the group of small arms who had gathered around the map awaiting the verdict.

"That little gesture," he said, referring to the study of the map he had just made, "represents my first action as I return hurriedly back to the place where the light-machine-gun platoons are halted under cover. I am looking for the best position for my guns to support the mounted attack. It would be much simpler, too, if I were actually on the ground, because the whole area could be seen at a glance. However, this ridge here (pointing to ridge running northeast from RJ 529-H) offers an excellent gun position for my targets, offers a little cover while getting into action (hence the probability of getting in the element of a heavy surprise fire), and last but not least, is such a short distance from where the troops are right now that I can get fire on my target as soon as the mounted attack moves over the crest of the ridge.

"As soon as I returned to the platoons I would lead them to a position about here (pointing to E) and put them into action by issuing the following oral order:

"Troop I on right, Troop K on left.

"Troop I target enemy woods there, left half of target.

"Troop K target enemy woods there, right half of target.

"Fire when in position.

"I will be on left of Troop I positions.

"Any questions?

"Move out."

"Very simple, you see, very simple," said H. M., "and in closing let me leave these few thoughts with you all. Lieutenant Goodshott received very few instructions from Major Upan Attem as to the use of the light machine guns in the attack. As a matter of fact, there are not many to give. Likewise, the lieutenant issues the simplest order that will place the guns in action efficiently. His order coordinates the two platoons in the accomplishment of their fire mission. Fire is placed on enemy at RJ 548-C, since fire on that point will aid squadron plan of action. Fire cannot be placed on enemy at schoolhouse due to terrain and necessity for surprise. The enemy in position at RJ 548-C might take the mounted attack under fire from the flank and this fire mission of the light machine guns will prevent that from happening."

Then turning to L. M. Gunn, he paid a parting shot with, "And don't forget that bet."

"You win," replied L. M., "but next time I'll make my bets with the horseshoer."

## The Cavalry Rifle Team Assembly and Tryouts

By 1st Lieut. Walter E. Finnegan, 2d Cavalry

THE last week of May witnessed the assembly of past and potential distinguished rifle and pistol shots as by train and automobile the "peep-eyes" converged on Erie Ordnance Depot at LaCarne, Ohio. The Cavalry Rifle Team was reporting for training.

Captained this year by Captain George A. Rehm and ably coached by Capt. J. Holden Phillips and Capt. Clyde A. Burcham the carefully selected squad of old and new men stand every prospect of representing well and true the best traditions of Cavalry spirit and training in this year's national match competition.

No time is wasted in getting settled at Erie Ordnance, and twenty-four hours or less usually finds a man on the range targeting in. During this period all rifle firing is done in the mornings, the afternoons being devoted to rifle schools, dry shooting, position work, and pistol firing.

Weather, this year, has been very favorable and although the rainfall has been considerable with occasional wind of high velocity, the shooting progressed steadily and favorably to the end of June.

## OHIO STATE MATCHES

The Ohio State Matches were fired on the range at Camp Perry the last week in June. These matches consist of rifle, pistol, and small bore competition at various ranges. They were attended by several hundred civilian shooters from Ohio and neighboring states, and by representatives from the Cavalry and Infantry rifle Teams.

The official bulletin has not yet been published for these matches although a number of especially high scores were fired.

## CAVALRY WINS PISTOL

The pistol bulletins in these matches seemed to represent a Cavalry roster. Captain Rehm took second place and Sgt. Jensen third place in the 50 yd. slow fire (cal. .22) match. Captain Burcham won the time fire match with a score of 196 out of 200. All three places went to Cavalry in the Rapid Fire Match, Sgt. Jensen being high, Capt. Palmer placing second, and Captain Rehm, third.

## CAVALRY HIGH IN INDIANA

On July 17th a selected group of eight pistol men were sent to the Indiana State Matches at Frankfort, Ind., to represent the United States Cavalry. On arrival they found an excellent little pistol range with pistol teams gathered from Indiana and neighboring states, and a representation from the Infantry Team. Instead of the .22 caliber being fired here, as in Ohio, most matches were for the service pistol only. The Cavalry won three of the five matches, and nine of the fifteen places. Captain Palmer won the Indiana State Championship with Capt. Burcham placing second. Sgt. Jensen won the Slow Fire Match with Sgt. Grider second and Capt. Palmer third. Capt. Burcham won the Time Fire Match with Sgt. Rey-

nolds third. Capt. Palmer won second place in the Rapid Fire Match and Sgt. Jensen won second place in the Center Fire Match at 25 yards. The medals, gold, silver, and bronze, for these places have recently been received. They are of an unusual design, very attractive and will be fitting mementos for the splendid scores in these matches.

#### THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY MATCHES

By the middle of July the training had progressed suf-

ficiently to offer keen competition in the Chief of Cavalry Matches. These matches are fired every year for trophies that have been presented by distinguished Cavalrymen and various units, for annual competition. It is most interesting to note that these matches were not all easy shooting for old shots, for many new men, dark horses, the shooters of tomorrow edged out the older men. A great deal of interest and enthusiasm was shown and the bulletin board was crowded during each match.

The matches are as follows:

#### CAVALRY INDIVIDUAL TROPHY MATCH

COURSE: Once over the national match course (Possible 300)

NAME, RANK AND ORGANIZATION	200 OH	200 RF	300 RF	600 SF	1000	TOTAL
Wood, J. P. Corp., Hq. Tr., 7th Cav. ....	44	49	47	46	99	285
Cavalry Individual Trophy and Gold Medal						
*Kellerman, A. F., Corp., Tr. A, 1st Cav. ....	45	49	49	49	93	285
Silver Medal						
Williams, G. A., Capt., 13th Cav. ....	47	49	47	47	92	282
Bronze Medal						
(*Old Shot)						

#### INDIVIDUAL OFF HAND MATCH

COURSE: 20 shots at 200 yds. (possible 100)

*Shantz, V., Sgt., Tr. B, 11th Cav. ....	95
Cavalry School Trophy and Gold Medal	
*McGimpsey, W. T., S/Sgt., Tr. C, 1st Cav. ....	95
Silver Medal	
Kitterman, J. W., Corp., Hq. Tr., 14th Cav. ....	93
Bronze Medal	

#### FORT BLISS TROPHY

COURSE: 20 shots at 1,000 yds. (possible 100)

*Locke, W. A., Sgt., Tr. A, 12th Cav. ....	99
Fort Bliss Trophy and Gold Medal	
Betts, W. G., Sgt., Tr. B, 13th Cav. ....	99
Silver Medal	
Prince, W. R., 2d Lt., 6th Cav. ....	98
Bronze Medal	

#### INDIVIDUAL RAPID FIRE CHAMPIONSHIP MATCH

COURSE: Two scores 200 yds. rapid and two scores 300 yds. rapid on "A" Target (possible 200)

NAME, RANK AND ORGANIZATION	FIRST DAY		SECOND DAY		TOTAL
	200RF	300RF	200RF	300RF	
*Kellerman, A. F., Corp., Tr. A, 1st Cav. ....	50	48	49	47	194
Rapid Fire Championship Trophy and Gold Medal					
Kitterman, J. W., Corp., Hq. Tr., 14th Cav. ....	50	50	46	48	194
Silver Medal					
*Christensen, H., Sgt., Tr. A., 1st Armd. Car Sq. ....	50	47	49	47	193
Bronze Medal					

#### KROMER TROPHY

COURSE: Four (4) times over the National Match Course (possible 1,200)

*Kellerman, A. F., Corp., Tr. A, 1st Cav. ....	1,134
Kromer Trophy and Gold Medal	
Foster, P., Sgt., MG Tr., 11th Cav. ....	1,128
Silver Medal Holbrook Trophy and Gold Medal (For high New Man)	
*Jensen, J. B., S/Sgt., Cav. Sch. Det. ....	1,124
Bronze Medal	

## CAVALRY REGIMENTAL RIFLE TEAM MATCH

COURSE: National Match Course with the service rifle

	200 OH	200 RF	300 RF	600 SF	1,000 SF	TOTAL	TEAM TOTAL
<b>ELEVENTH CAVALRY</b>							
Foster, P., Sgt., MG Tr. ....	46	46	47	49	98	286	
*Shantz, V., Sgt., Tr. B .....	43	50	46	49	95	283	
Gillis, T. D., 2d Lt. ....	42	45	48	48	95	278	
Tzitzicas, G., Sgt., Tr. A .....	* 42	45	48	47	94	276	1,123
Regimental Rifle Team Trophy and Gold Medals							
<b>THIRD CAVALRY</b>							
*Detato, A., Corp., Tr. A .....	46	50	44	48	97	285	
*Yeszerski, E., Sgt., MG Tr. ....	44	47	47	48	95	281	
Towne, E., Sgt., Tr. B .....	45	47	47	46	93	278	
*Blazejevski, S., Sgt., Tr. A .....	43	49	47	49	85	273	1,117
Silver Medals							
<b>FOURTEENTH CAVALRY</b>							
*Grider, R. R., Sgt., Tr. F .....	46	48	46	50	93	283	
Kaminski, J., Corp., Tr. E .....	42	42	50	48	96	278	
Skonieczny, B. J., Pfc., Tr. B .....	45	47	49	46	91	278	
Kitterman, J. W., Corp., Hq. Tr. ....	41	47	47	48	93	276	1,115

## PISTOL MATCHES

## CAVALRY INDIVIDUAL PISTOL CHAMPIONSHIP KROMER TROPHY

COURSE: Four (4) times over the national match course (possible 1,200)

Burcham, C. A., Capt., 14th Cav. .... 1,086

Kromer Trophy and Gold Medal

Grider, R. R., Sgt., Tr. F, 14th Cav. .... 1,059

Silver Medal

Christensen, H. Sgt., Tr. A, 1st Armd. Car Sq. .... 1,041

Bronze Medal

## REGIMENTAL PISTOL TEAM

COURSE: National Match Course (possible 300)

NAME, RANK AND ORGANIZATION

	50SF	25TF	25RF	TOTAL	PAIR TOTAL
<b>FOURTEENTH CAVALRY</b>					
*Burcham, C. A., Capt. ....	86	92	92	270	
*Grider, R. R., Sgt., Tr. F .....	85	96	86	267	537
First Cavalry (Mecz) Trophy and Gold Medals					
<b>NINTH CAVALRY</b>					
Phillips, J. H., Capt. ....	76	90	91	257	
*Rehm, G. A., Capt. ....	83	91	90	264	521
Silver Medals					
<b>THIRD CAVALRY</b>					
*Blazejevski, S., Sgt., Tr. A .....	82	92	91	265	
*Yeszerski, E., Sgt., MG Tr. ....	81	83	89	253	518

## WAKEFIELD MATCHES

Due to unforeseen circumstances the travel money for the United Service Matches at Wakefield, Mass., was recalled this year. This occasioned great disappointment as such a trip, besides offering a welcome respite from the daily shooting routine, presents the opportunity for actual competitive shooting against other branches on a strange range. In addition to stimulating a desire to show our own branch to its best advantage, it is a test of the cumulative knowledge of light and wind gained on our own range. Such a trip oftimes is of great value in bringing

out unsuspected weaknesses and also proving unsuspected strength. It is strongly hoped that mileage will be available for this trip in future years.

From the foregoing scores and the realization that the training season is only two-thirds along it is not too much to assume at the time of writing, that the Cavalry has every prospect and right to believe that it will be ably represented at the final goal of the season, the National Matches.





### A Word on Leadership

MANY articles have been written on leadership. They all list as necessary almost all the human virtues. Courage, force, determination, knowledge, physical fitness, etc., etc. Most of these virtues are innate, though some of them can be cultivated. That intangible thing called character is probably the most important of all. It includes in itself many of the others.

But, without denying the value or even the indispensability of most of those things that are insisted upon usually, I wish to state a few things that are often overlooked, and without which true leadership is not attained.

Loyalty is a virtue that is demanded of subordinates and often overlooked as a necessity in the chief himself. Loyalty towards one's subordinates is quite as necessary as loyalty to one's chief. In fact, the true loyalty of one's subordinates is never attained unless they feel that the chief is loyal to them. There must be a mutual confidence up and down. The subordinate must feel that his chief will stand by him unless his errors or his neglects are so egregious as to be unforgivable. Loyalty to one's subordinates does not mean favoritism. On the contrary, it means justice. It often requires the highest moral courage in the Chief. It requires generosity and the willingness to give credit which the chief might like to have for himself.

The subordinate must feel that the chief understands the former's difficulties and has sympathy and consideration for them. He must feel that the chief will not shield himself by blaming subordinates for things which the

chief could have and should have obviated by action of his own.

A notable case was that of General Lee and General Longstreet at the battle of Gettysburg. Longstreet's tardy action there has been commented on severely, and blamed by many for the loss of the battle. But Lee knew that he himself could have forced Longstreet to act before he did. He also knew that Longstreet was too good an officer and too valuable a general to lose him by discrediting him and bringing him into disrepute. Furthermore, Lee was of a noble and generous disposition, and this trait of character endeared him to his officers and men and ensured a loyalty that could have been attained in no other way. Lee was a great example of the power of loyalty towards one's subordinates.

An unfailing courtesy towards one's subordinates, even in times of stress and great provocation, is another powerful factor in gaining their loyalty. An excellent rule is never to permit oneself to raise one's voice to a high key or to indulge in sarcasm, or in criticism without quiet explanation.

If to these qualities we add a true and convincing knowledge of our profession, an enthusiasm and a real knowledge of the jobs of our subordinate leaders so that we can tell them how to do a thing in a practical and convincing way, we have gone far in attaining leadership.

Assume that every man likes to do a thing well, and will appreciate clear explanation of how to do it, and that all correction can be absorbed better if a little praise is bestowed beforehand. And then, if we really know our business our leadership is assured.

*"Nor is it sufficient that an officer should be able to deal rapidly, and in a sound manner with tactical situations himself. He has also to instruct and prepare his subordinates equally with himself to meet these situations."*—GENERAL GOUGH.

## Letters To The Editor

August 10.

EDITOR, The CAVALRY JOURNAL:

In the May-June number you published "The Counter-Attack," giving due credit to *Revue de Cavalerie* of May-June, 1929.

Why don't you take some credit for our own CAVALRY JOURNAL which published it about seven years ago?

For years, I have thought it one of the finest examples of an attack by a small cavalry command in history and I used it yearly in my combat instruction while P.M.S.T. at Massachusetts State College.

To me, one of the finest points in the narrative is the attack order—not mentioned in the discussion.

In a mounted attack, rapid action is invaluable. Opposing firing lines build up rapidly—mounted forces may move to other parts. In an action such as described, the men know the special and general situations, supporting troops, etc., the weapon to be used, the formations, the direction of attack, object of attack—nothing more is necessary for a squadron—and nothing more *was* necessary in this action.

Even in a larger command of cavalry, short orders are often all that are needed. At Beer Sheba Chauvel ordered:

"Put Grant straight at them." That was all that was necessary. I never could find Grant's orders but I'll warrant that it was not in 5 paragraph form! And in a few minutes Grant was on his way in the greatest mounted attack since 1870, and successful.

C. A. ROMEYN,  
Col., Cav.

### Letters from a Djinn

DEAR BOSS:

You have gone and torn it, now. In compliance with yours of the last aeon, I proceeded to Jake and Pete's Place, corner of Boondoggle Avenue and Twenty-Third-And-A-Half Street, and approached Herman G. Hype, who was asleep over his beer.

Throwing aside my astral robes I materialized right square in front of Mr. Hype, showed him the lamp, and told him if he rubbed it he could have anything he wanted—once.

I was certainly surprised—or do you know something about this business I don't? I had made the usual arrangements for assuring Mr. Hype there was no kidding about this proposition, and was prepared to supply the usual amounts of wine, women, and song, in addition to taking

care of the usual number of personal enemies of Mr. Hype.

But Hype arose, kicked his chair back, made a casual pass at the lamp, and in a very businesslike manner said: "Take a letter. To Whom it May Concern—By tomorrow at sundown preparations will be completed to abandon the following army posts and stations, pleas of bereaved merchants notwithstanding [list of stations], following which the 1st and 2d Divisions, war strength, will be constituted at Fort Bragg, North Carolina. These will act as demonstration troops for the Infantry, Cavalry, and Field Artillery Schools, which will also be stationed there, and for the Command and General Staff School, whose new name is to be the Army Tactical School. Two-sided maneuvers will be employed liberally. The divisions will form a corps for annual problems of the Army War College during the month of May, during which service ammunition will be fired for effect. Attack, pursuit, and observation aviation will be attached as needed. The Coast Artillery will detail the necessary antiaircraft matériel. The Chemical Warfare Tactical School will be established at Fort Bragg. So will a Field Engineer School. Any additional lands required will be purchased and charged to my account.

"New paragraph. The crossing of the Little River will be made by units as large as one brigade at least once monthly during the year, and at least twice a year at night. Smoke and tear gas, to enforce the wearing of masks, will be used frequently.

"New paragraph. The order to 'hold' a position will henceforth require complete organization of the ground, including extensive camouflage and fortification, and, for the artillery, the selection of alternate positions, preparation of dummy positions, and enforcement of camouflage discipline.

"New paragraph. Tactical marches of any nature will be accompanied by low-flying-plane simulated attacks, to accustom men and animals to the moral effect of such attacks.

"New paragraph. More later. Messages to me at this CP. Jake, bring me a bottle of milk, and a couple of aspirins for the djinn here. Are there any questions? No? Posts!"

Mr. Hype sank back in his chair and started to resume his nap. A fly lit on his bald head and he half-raised one hand to swat it. In the middle of his gesture, he half-opened one eye, and looked at me. I got it, boss. I killed the fly. I think we are going to have a little trouble with this bird.

EL GUFU.

# At The Cavalry School

## List of Graduates The Cavalry School 1936-37 Courses

### Regular Class

Bethel, John M., Captain, Cavalry  
 Bryan, Charles H., Captain, Cavalry  
 Burch, Claude O., Captain, Cavalry  
 Collier, John H., Captain, Cavalry  
 Cooley, John B., Captain, Cavalry  
 Drury, Frederick W., Captain, Cavalry  
 Engerud, Harold, Captain, Cavalry  
 Fennell, Martin A., Captain, Cavalry  
 Fulton, Alan L., Captain, Cavalry  
 Heiberg, Harrison H. D., Captain, Cavalry  
 Hine, Henry C., Jr., Captain, Cavalry  
 Hoffman, Hugh F. T., Captain, Cavalry  
 Johnston, Eugene C., Captain, Cavalry  
 Judge, Lyman L., Captain, Cavalry  
 Marcus, Morris H., Captain, Cavalry  
 Martin, Charles H., Captain, Cavalry  
 Martin, Paul MacK., Captain, Cavalry  
 Mitchell, James K., Captain, Cavalry  
 Murphy, Robert V., Captain, Infantry  
 Rapp, Louis B., Captain, Cavalry  
 Read, George W., Jr., Captain, Cavalry  
 Riseley, James P., Captain, U. S. Marine Corps  
 Sawtelle, Donald W., Captain, Cavalry  
 Sells, John K., Captain, Cavalry  
 Shaw, Virgil F., Captain, Cavalry  
 Smith, Lawrence G., Captain, Cavalry  
 Thornburgh, Thomas T., Captain, Cavalry  
 Ward, John T., Captain, Cavalry  
 Wofford, John W., Captain, Cavalry

### Advanced Equitation Class

Bradley, William J., Captain, Cavalry  
 Chandler, William E., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 Culp, William W., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 Lichirie, Cornelius A., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 Mather, George R., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 McClelland, Charles B., Jr., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 Quill, James B., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 Sanford, Scott M., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 Tayloe, Walter R., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Waters, John K., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry  
 Wright, William H. S., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry

### Post of Fort Riley Class

Carroll, John W., Major, 2d Cavalry  
 Maddocks, Ray T., Major, Cavalry  
 Miller, Harry W., Captain, 2d Cavalry  
 Miller, Whitside, 1st Lieutenant, 2d Cavalry  
 Riepe, John H., Captain, 2d Cavalry  
 Scott, Winfield C., Captain, 2d Cavalry  
 Shipp, William E., Major, 2d Cavalry  
 Stansbury, Elmer V., Captain, Cavalry  
 Taylor, Perry E., Major, 2d Cavalry  
 Tully, Joseph M., Major, 9th Cavalry  
 Walker, Samuel P., Jr., Captain, 9th Cavalry  
 Wilson, Vennard, Major, 2d Cavalry

### National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class

Abraham, Dale D., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Bahm, Sandy B., 2d Lieutenant, 108th Cavalry, Louisiana N. G.  
 Barker, George M., 2d Lieutenant, 101st Cavalry, New York, N. G.  
 Basila, Basil F., Captain, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Bauer, Albert H., 2d Lieutenant, 107th Cavalry, Ohio N. G.  
 Burns, James P., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Cooper, Gibson B., Captain, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Craig, Edward W., 1st Lieutenant, 115th Cavalry, Wyoming N. G.  
 Cruikshank, Douglas B., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Dukehart, Graham, 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Ellis, Nathan W., Captain, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Franklin, Horace A., Captain, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Garbarino, Victor J., Captain, 106th Cavalry, Michigan, N. G.  
 Green, Roy, Major, 107th Cavalry, Ohio N. G.  
 Hardsocg, Martino B., Captain 113th Cavalry, Iowa N. G.  
 Harkins, Kellogg W., Major, 53d Cavalry Brigade, Wisconsin N. G.  
 Hart, Henry B., Captain, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Hays, Harry F., 1st Lieutenant, 115th Cavalry, Wyoming N. G.  
 Holmes, Luther A., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Lutz, Robert C., Captain, 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania N. G.  
 Marth, Albert F., Captain, 111th Cavalry, New Mexico N. G.  
 Perkins, Edward McC., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Rabedeau, Melbourne E., Captain, 105th Cavalry, Wisconsin N. G.  
 Rice, Kenneth E., 2d Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Sadler, James E., 1st Lieutenant, 111th Cavalry, New Mexico N. G.  
 Shull, Lester A., 2d Lieutenant, 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania N. G.  
 West, Percy L., Captain, 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.  
 Weston, Frederick H., 1st Lieutenant, Cavalry-Reserve  
 Wilkes, John S., 2d Lieutenant, 121st Cavalry, New York N. G.  
 Wilson, Royal C., Captain, 110th Cavalry, Massachusetts N. G.

### Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class

Boyd, Clifford C., 6819117, Corporal, Troop E, 2d Cavalry  
 Carnes, Avery W., 6244653, Corporal, Troop F, 8th Cavalry  
 Costigan, Clifford, 6640395, Sergeant, Troop B, 2d Cavalry  
 Degood, Albert F., 6817166, Corporal, Troop F, 2d Cavalry  
 Ferguson, William A., 6808811, Corporal, Troop F, 3d Cavalry  
 Ford, Robert L., 6379718, Corporal, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry  
 Lewis, Roger E., 6372579, Corporal, Troop E, 12th Cavalry  
 Lingk, Gerhard, 6779772, Corporal, Troop B, 14th Cavalry  
 Lowry, Joseph V., 6794347, Corporal, Troop E, 14th Cavalry  
 Moulder, Veo, 6358565, Corporal, Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade  
 Neal, Charles G., 6412936, Sergeant, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry  
 Rudisal, Columbus, R-3215068, Corporal, Troop E, 9th Cavalry  
 Watson, Chesshir, 6820077, Corporal, Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry  
 Wilson, Sidney A., 6457919, Sergeant, Headquarters Troop, 10th Cavalry

## Cavalry School Graduation Equestrian Events

EQUESTRIAN events for Graduation 1937 at the Cavalry School commenced with the Green Charger Competition in April. From then on things happened fast and furiously. Horse show trips to Fort Sill, Fort Reno, and Fort Leavenworth, and our own show kept things going at a fast pace; something was going on all

the time—sometimes two or three things. The events for graduation were similar to events of previous years except the Horse Show (which is described in a separate article), and the Cavalry School Pentathlon which replaced the Standard Stakes.

The Pentathlon as initiated this year was similar to



the Standard Stakes but improved by additions and modifications which were designed to limit the element of luck common to the Standard Stakes. The combined Pentathlon event included the Swimming Phase (possible score 100), the Night Ride (possible score 500), Use of Arms Phase, Pistol (possible score 50), Rifle (possible score 20), Light Machine Gun (possible score 40), and Hand Grenade (possible score 10), a five-mile Cross-Country Phase, mounted, and an Endurance Phase, dismounted. Contestants were assigned horses in sufficient time prior to the event to allow ample time for proper conditioning. Each contestant was then required to ride that horse throughout the combined event.

The Swimming Phase was held at the Swimming Pool at 9:00 AM, Monday, June 7th, the Night Ride (25 miles) began at 8:30 PM that night; the other phases began at 10:00 AM, the following morning, Tuesday, June 8th. For the Tuesday phases the contestants started at the east end of the Hippodrome and ran on foot to dismounted Pistol Range where they fired five (5) rounds at an "L" target (score—actual hits on target—possible 50), then ran to the Hand Grenade Range and threw two (2) hand grenades from a Pit into or at a forty (40) foot circle (possible score 10), then mounted and individually proceeded over a flagged Cross-Country course including obstacles on the Hunter Trials Course (possible score 250). Thence via the Sand Dunes to the National Range where they fired ten (10) rounds with rifle at a standing Silhouette Target, at a range of two hundred (200) yards (score—2 points per hit), mounted and rode to the Light Machine Gun course where they fired twenty (20) rounds at standing Silhouette Targets, range three hundred (300) yards (score—2 points per hit), then again mounted they rode to a Veterinary Collecting station where they dismounted and ran one hundred (100) yards to the finish line. The first contestant across the finish received one hundred points; each succeeding contestant one (1) point less in the order of finishing. The condition of the horse was judged when turned over at the Veterinary Collecting Station with a possible score of two hundred fifty (250) points. The possible score for the entire Pentathlon, including the Night Ride and Swimming Phase, was fourteen hundred twenty (1,420) points. An entry fee of one (1) dollar was charged, with the entire money stake going to the winner of the combined event. Trophies were awarded; one to winner of entire event; one to the member of Regular Class with the highest aggregate score; one to the winner of Night Ride Phase; and one to the member of the Regular Class with the highest score in the Use of Arms Phase and Cross-Country Phase.

The event proved highly interesting to competitors and spectators. Detailed results of the Pentathlon and of all other Graduation Events follow:

#### *The Cavalry School Pentathlon (Open)*

PLACE	RIDER	MOUNT
1.	1st Lieut. B. S. Cairns, 2d Cavalry	<i>Fantastic King</i>
2.	Capt. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	<i>Hilajak</i>

PLACE	RIDER	MOUNT
3.	Capt. T. T. Thornburgh, Cavalry	<i>Strutter</i>
4.	Capt. M. H. Marcus, Cavalry	<i>Dew Dance</i>

#### *Night Ride (Open)*

1.	Capt. T. T. Thornburgh, Cavalry	<i>Strutter</i>
2.	Capt. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	<i>Hilajak</i>
3.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Muddy Water</i>
4.	Capt. V. F. Shaw, Cavalry	<i>Metallic</i>

#### *Pentathlon Winner in Regular Class*

1.	Cap. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	<i>Hilajak</i>
2.	Capt. T. T. Thornburgh, Cavalry	<i>Strutter</i>
3.	Capt. M. H. Marcus, Cavalry	<i>Dew Dance</i>
4.	Capt. V. F. Shaw, Cavalry	<i>Metallic</i>

#### *Pentathlon Winner in Regular Class— Use of Arms and Cross Country Phases*

1.	Capt. John M. Bethel, Cavalry	<i>Dintate</i>
2.	{ Capt. A. L. Fulton, Cavalry	<i>Miss Beason</i>
	{ Capt. R. V. Murphy, Infantry	<i>Sailor Girl</i>
3.	Capt. M. A. Fennell, Cavalry	<i>Kay Boy</i>
	{ Capt. V. F. Shaw, Cavalry	<i>Metallic</i>
4.	{ Capt. C. O. Burch, Cavalry	<i>Trail Blazer</i>

#### *Night Ride—Regular Class*

1.	Capt. T. T. Thornburgh, Cavalry	<i>Strutter</i>
2.	Capt. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	<i>Hilajak</i>
	{ Capt. V. F. Shaw, Cavalry	<i>Metallic</i>
3.	{ Capt. M. H. Marcus, Cavalry	<i>Dew Dance</i>
	{ Capt. L. G. Smith, Cavalry	<i>Fitz K</i>
4.	{ Capt. G. W. Read, Jr., Cavalry	<i>Lame Deer</i>

#### *Advanced Equitation Class—Advanced Charger Competition*

1.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Little Alarm</i>
2.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Fraternity</i>
3.	1st Lieut. W. W. Culp, Cavalry	<i>Sally F.</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. H. S. Wright, Cavalry	<i>Fitzera</i>

#### *Advanced Equitation Class—Advanced Charger Schooling*

1.	1st Lieut. W. R. Tayloe, Cav.-Res.	<i>Miss Gibbon</i>
2.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Little Alarm</i>
3.	1st Lieut. W. H. S. Wright, Cavalry	<i>Fitzera</i>
4.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Fraternity</i>

#### *Advanced Equitation Class—Advanced Charger Jumping Phase*

1.	1st Lieut. G. R. Mather, Cavalry	<i>Fitzota</i>
2.	1st Lieut. W. H. S. Wright, Cavalry	<i>Fitzera</i>
3.	1st Lieut. W. E. Chandler, Cavalry	<i>Anita Mentor</i>
4.	1st Lieut. J. B. Quill, Cavalry	<i>Sootber</i>

#### *Advanced Equitation Class—Advanced Charger Endurance Phase*

1.	1st Lieut. W. E. Chandler, Cavalry	<i>Anita Mentor</i>
2.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Fraternity</i>
3.	1st Lieut. W. W. Culp, Cavalry	<i>Sally F.</i>
4.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Little Alarm</i>

#### *Advanced Equitation Class—Green Charger Competition*

1.	1st Lieut. J. B. Quill, Cavalry	<i>Reno Grandeur</i>
2.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Dark Plume</i>
3.	1st Lieut. G. R. Mather, Cavalry	<i>Coffee Cake</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. R. Tayloe, Cav.-Res.	<i>Glorious</i>

#### *Advanced Equitation Class—Green Charger Schooling Phase*

1.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Dark Plume</i>
2.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Canolita</i>
3.	1st Lieut. J. B. Quill, Cavalry	<i>Reno Grandeur</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. R. Tayloe, Cav.-Res.	<i>Glorious</i>

*Advanced Equitation Class—Green Charger Jumping Phase*

PLACE	RIDER	MOUNT
1.	1st Lieut. J. B. Quill, Cavalry	<i>Reno Grandeur</i>
2.	1st Lieut. G. R. Mather, Cavalry	<i>Coffee Cake</i>
3.	1st Lieut. W. H. S. Wright, Cavalry	<i>Reno Gladness</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. W. Culp, Cavalry	<i>French Bouquet</i>

*Advanced Equitation Class—Remount Competition*

1.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Scottsbluff</i>
2.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Gibraltar</i>
3.	1st Lieut. G. R. Mather, Cavalry	<i>Davie</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. R. Tayloe, Cav.-Res.	<i>Insured</i>

*Advanced Equitation Class—Remount Schooling Phase*

1.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Gibraltar</i>
2.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Scottsbluff</i>
3.	1st Lieut. G. R. Mather, Cavalry	<i>Davie</i>
4.	1st Lieut. C. A. Licherie, Cavalry	<i>Prepare</i>

*Advanced Equitation Class—Remount Outdoor Phase*

1.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	<i>Scottsbluff</i>
2.	1st Lieut. G. R. Mather, Cavalry	<i>Davie</i>
3.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>Gibraltar</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. R. Tayloe, Cav.-Res.	<i>Insured</i>

*Advanced Equitation Class—Polo Horse Competition*

1.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>French Girl</i>
2.	1st Lieut. J. B. Quill, Cavalry	<i>Flores Negres</i>
3.	1st Lieut. W. R. Tayloe, Cav.-Res.	<i>Skeeter</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. E. Chandler, Cavalry	<i>Reno Frontier</i>

*Advanced Equitation Class—Polo Horse Schooling Phase*

1.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	<i>French Girl</i>
2.	1st Lieut. J. B. Quill, Cavalry	<i>Flores Negres</i>
3.	1st Lieut. W. R. Tayloe, Cav.-Res.	<i>Skeeter</i>
4.	1st Lieut. W. E. Chandler, Cavalry	<i>Reno Frontier</i>

*Advanced Equitation Class—THE LORILLARD CUP*

(Combined scores of competition of Advanced Chargers, Green Chargers, Green Polo Horses and Remounts)

1.	1st Lieut. S. M. Sanford, Cavalry	
2.	1st Lieut. G. R. Mather, Cavalry	
3.	1st Lieut. C. B. McClelland, Jr., Cav.	
4.	1st Lieut. W. W. Culp, Cavalry	

*Regular Class—Chargers' Jumping—1st Platoon*

1.	Capt. H. H. D. Heiberg, Cavalry	<i>Trail Blazer</i>
2.	Capt. G. W. Read, Jr., Cavalry	<i>Slim Holmes</i>
3.	Capt. H. F. F. Hoffman, Cavalry	<i>Fitzrada</i>
4.	Captain C. H. Martin, Cavalry	<i>Hilajak</i>

*Regular Class—Chargers' Jumping—2d Platoon*

1.	Capt. J. W. Wofford, Cavalry	<i>Ansonia</i>
2.	Capt. H. C. Hine, Jr., Cavalry	<i>Tyrol</i>
3.	Capt. A. L. Fulton, Cavalry	<i>Don R.</i>
4.	Capt. L. G. Smith, Cavalry	<i>Adalid</i>

*Regular Class—Remount Competition*

1.	Capt. J. W. Wofford, Cavalry	<i>Autumn Mark</i>
2.	Capt. H. F. T. Hoffman, Cavalry	<i>Henry Watterson</i>
3.	Capt. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	<i>Goranda</i>
4.	Capt. M. H. Marcus, Cavalry	<i>Light Mist</i>

*Regular Class—Remount Schooling Phase—1st Platoon*

1.	Capt. H. F. T. Hoffman, Cavalry	<i>Henry Watterson</i>
2.	Capt. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	<i>Goranda</i>
3.	Capt. C. H. Bryan, Cavalry	<i>Show Man</i>
4.	Capt. J. H. Collier, Cavalry	<i>Misty Lou</i>

*Regular Class—Remount Schooling Phase—2d Platoon*

1.	Capt. M. H. Marcus, Cavalry	<i>Light Mist</i>
2.	Capt. J. B. Cooley, Cavalry	<i>Bonera</i>
3.	Capt. J. W. Wofford, Cavalry	<i>Autumn Mark</i>
4.	Capt. R. V. Murphy, Infantry	<i>Star Dick</i>

*Regular Class—Remount Outdoor Phase—1st Platoon*

1.	Capt. G. W. Read, Jr., Cavalry	<i>Pergola</i>
2.	Capt. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	<i>Goranda</i>
3.	Capt. H. F. T. Hoffman, Cavalry	<i>Henry Watterson</i>
4.	Capt. C. O. Burch, Cavalry	<i>Golden Ray</i>

*Regular Class—Remount Outdoor Phase—2d Platoon*

1.	Capt. J. W. Wofford, Cavalry	<i>Autumn Mark</i>
2.	Capt. A. L. Fulton, Cavalry	<i>Red Cap</i>
3.	Capt. L. G. Smith, Cavalry	<i>Rebel</i>
4.	Capt. L. L. Judge, Cavalry	<i>Reno Guardian</i>

*Regular Class—The Cavalryman's Bowl*

Capt. L. G. Smith, Cavalry

*Regular Class—All-Round Equestrian Championship*

1.	Capt. J. P. Riseley, U. S. Marine Corps	
2.	Capt. C. H. Marcus, Cavalry	
3.	Captain A. L. Fulton, Cavalry	
4.	Capt. V. F. Shaw, Cavalry	

*National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class—Leadership Trophy*

Major Kellogg W. Harkins, 53d Cavalry  
Brigade, Wisconsin National Guard

*National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class—Cross Country and Jumping Competition*

1.	1st Lieut. J. P. Burns, Cavalry Reserve	<i>Kay Boy</i>
2.	1st Lieut. D. B. Cruickshank, Cav.-Res.	<i>Glen</i>
3.	Capt. N. W. Ellis, Cavalry Reserve	<i>Black Cap</i>
4.	2d Lieut. J. S. Wilkes, 121st Cavalry, New York, National Guard	<i>Olaf</i>

*National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class—Mounted Pistol Competition*

1.	Capt. Robert C. Lutz, 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania, National Guard	<i>Mad Sovereign</i>
2.	Capt. Basil F. Basilia, Cavalry Reserve	<i>Far East</i>
3.	Capt. Royal C. Wilson, 110th Cavalry, Massachusetts, National Guard	<i>Nuncas</i>
4.	1st Lieut. Dale D. Abraham, Cav.-Res.	<i>Primus</i>

*National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class—Point to Point Night Ride*

1.	1st Lieut. D. B. Cruickshank, Cav. Res.	<i>Glen</i>
2.	2d Lieut. L. A. Shull, 104th Cavalry, Pennsylvania, National Guard	<i>Reno Gallant</i>
3.	{ 1st Lieut. F. H. Westen, Cav. Res. . . . . 1st Lieut. D. D. Abraham, Cav. Res. . . . .	<i>Problem</i> <i>Mad Sovereign</i>
4.	1st Lieut. H. F. Hays, 115th Cavalry, Wyoming, National Guard	<i>Rote Bar</i>

*Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—Troopers' Mount Competition*

1.	Corp. A. F. Degood, Troop F, 2d Cav.	<i>Pagan Lady</i>
2.	Corp. R. L. Ford, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry	<i>Reno Gallop</i>
3.	Serg. C. Costigan, Troop B, 2d Cav.	<i>Gwilder</i>
4.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cavalry	<i>Miss Cross</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Troopers' Mount Schooling Phase

PLACE	RIDER	MOUNT
1.	Corp. A. F. Degood, Troop F, 2d Cav.	<i>Pagan Lady</i>
2.	Corp. C. C. Boyd, Troop E, 2d Cav.	<i>I. P. Swift</i>
3.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cav.	<i>Miss Cross</i>
4.	Corp. R. L. Ford, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry	<i>Reno Gallop</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Troopers' Mount Jumping Phase

1.	Corp. R. L. Ford, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry	<i>Reno Gallop</i>
2.	Serg. C. Costigan, Troop B, 2d Cavalry	<i>Guilder</i>
3.	Corp. A. F. Degood, Troop F, 2d Cav.	<i>Pagan Lady</i>
4.	Corp. G. Lingk, Troop B, 14th Cavalry	<i>Mickey</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Remount Competition, 1st Group

1.	Corp. R. L. Ford, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry	<i>Cauthorn</i>
2.	Corp. C. Watson, Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry	<i>Powder</i>
3.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cav.	<i>Fortune Teller</i>
4.	Serg. C. G. Neal, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry	<i>Flash Annie</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Remount Competition, 1st Group—Schooling Phase

1.	Corp. C. Watson, Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry	<i>Powder</i>
2.	Corp. A. F. Degood, Troop F, 2d Cav.	<i>Reno Havoc</i>
3.	Sgt. C. G. Neal, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry	<i>Flash Annie</i>
4.	Sgt. C. Costigan, Troop B, 2d Cavalry	<i>Glamorgan</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Remount Competition, 1st Group—Outdoor Phase

1.	Corp. R. L. Ford, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry	<i>Cauthorn</i>
2.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cav.	<i>Fortune Teller</i>
3.	Corp. W. A. Ferguson, Troop F, 3d Cavalry	<i>Runwell</i>
4.	Corp. G. Lingk, Troop B, 14th Cavalry	<i>Dark Majesty</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Remount Competition, 2d Group

PLACE	RIDER	MOUNT
1.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cav.	<i>Mayverne</i>
2.	Corp. V. Moulder, Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade	<i>Miss Alibi</i>
3.	Corp. C. Rudisal, Troop E, 9th Cavalry	<i>Claudions</i>
4.	Corp. R. L. Ford, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry	<i>Warrior</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Remount Competition, 2d Group—Schooling Phase

1.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cav.	<i>Mayverne</i>
2.	Corp. R. L. Ford, Machine Gun Troop, 7th Cavalry	<i>Warrior</i>
3.	Corp. A. F. Degood, Troop F, 2d Cav.	<i>Hackberry</i>
4.	Corp. W. A. Ferguson, Troop F, 3d Cavalry	<i>Moonlon</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Remount Competition, 2d Group—Outdoor Phase

1.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cav.	<i>Mayverne</i>
2.	Corp. C. Rudisal, Troop E, 9th Cav.	<i>Claudions</i>
3.	Corp. V. Moulder, Headquarters Troop, 1st Cavalry Brigade	<i>Miss Alibi</i>
4.	Corp. G. Lingk, Troop B, 14th Cavalry	<i>Starbo</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
Night Ride

1.	Corp. C. C. Boyd, Troop E, 2d Cavalry	<i>I. P. Swift</i>
2.	Sgt. C. G. Neal, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry	<i>Plater</i>
3.	Corp. W. A. Ferguson, Troop F, 3d Cavalry	<i>Ethel D.</i>
4.	Corp. A. F. Degood, Troop F, 2d Cav.	<i>Pagan Lady</i>

Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class—  
All-Round Equestrian Championship

1.	Sgt. C. G. Neal, Headquarters Troop, 11th Cavalry	
2.	Corp. A. W. Carnes, Troop F, 8th Cav.	
3.	Corp. W. A. Ferguson, Troop F, 3d Cavalry	
4.	Corp. A. F. Degood, Troop F, 2d Cav.	

# The Cavalry School Race Meeting

Riverside Race Track, May 30, 1937

Weather: Warm, occasional showers before race, strong south wind. Course: Track slow.

## FIRST RACE

*The Caisson*.—For four year olds and upward, government owned, ridden by enlisted men of the 84th Field Artillery. Limited to three entries per battery. Catch weights. Entry free. Purse \$27.50 of which \$7.50 to second and \$5.00 to third. One-half mile on the flat. Winner: 84th Field Artillery, *Domino*, b,g,5, by *Centurian-Unk*. Trainer: Captain T. Gunby, 84th Field Artillery.

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Mack</i> , ch,g,11	3	Pvt. Helms	84th Field Artillery
<i>Stub</i> , ch,g,10	2	Pvt. Noel	84th Field Artillery
<i>Terry</i> , b,m,9		Sgt. Taylor	84th Field Artillery
<i>Lanky</i> , bl,g,12		Pvt. Long	84th Field Artillery
<i>Sis</i> , ch,m,9		Pvt. Eisenhart	84th Field Artillery
<i>Fig</i> , br,g,5		Pvt. J. Smith	84th Field Artillery

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Domino</i> , b,g,5	1	Pvt. Sleeper	84th Field Artillery
<i>Plateau</i> , b,m,5		Pvt. W. Jones	84th Field Artillery
<i>Model Girl</i> , b,m,8		Pvt. McGee	84th Field Artillery
<i>Cry Baby</i> , ch,g,7		Pvt. Brigham	84th Field Artillery
<i>Prime</i> , bl,g,13		Pvt. Heflin	84th Field Artillery
<i>Scotty</i> , ch,g,11		Cpl. Frazier	84th Field Artillery
<i>Sylvia</i> , ch,m,6		Pvt. Waite	84th Field Artillery

*Mack* broke fast. *Stub* took the lead immediately afterwards, holding it until the home stretch. Fifty yards from finish *Domino* caught up. *Domino* won driving by a neck. Time 58 1/5 seconds. Scratched: *Buddy*.

## SECOND RACE

*The Grasslands Point-to-Point*.—For troopers' mounts regularly assigned to the Noncommissioned Officers' Advanced Equitation Class, to be ridden by members of that class. Half breeds to carry 160 pounds, thoroughbreds 170 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. About two (2) miles over timber.



Winner: Cavalry School's *One Shot*, ch,m,6 by *Mentada-Unk*. Trainer: Captain S. P. Walker, Jr., 9th Cavalry.

STARTERS	WEIGHT	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>I. P. Swift</i> , ch,g,6	160	3	Cpl. Boyd	Cavalry School
<i>Miss Cross</i> , ch,m,6	170		Cpl. Carnes	Cavalry School
<i>Guilder</i> , ch,g,7	160		Sgt. Costigan	Cavalry School
<i>Pagan Lady</i> , b,m,6	160		Cpl. Degood	Cavalry School
<i>Ethel D</i> , ch,m,6	170	2	Cpl. Ferguson	Cavalry School
<i>Reno Gallop</i> , b,g,6	170		Cpl. Ford	Cavalry School
<i>Billet Doux</i> , b,g,7	160		Cpl. Lewis	Cavalry School
<i>Fritz Riley</i> , br,g,5	160		Cpl. Lowry	Cavalry School
<i>One Shot</i> , ch,m,6	160	1	Cpl. Moulder	Cavalry School
<i>Plater</i> , ch,g,6	160		Sgt. Neal	Cavalry School

*Guilder* took lead in a slow field contined to gain. Over seventh fence leading by six lengths. *Ethel D* and *One Shot* began closing. *Guilder*, *One Shot*, and *Ethel D* bunched coming into stretch. *One Shot* caught *Guilder* fifty (50) yards from finish and won by half a length. Time: 5:12 4/5. *Guilder* disqualified for loss of course. Scratched: *Mickey*, *Sweet Dadie*, *Sully Gibbon*.

### THIRD RACE

*The Dragoon*.—For four year olds and upward, government owned, ridden by enlisted men of the 2d Cavalry. Limited to two entries per troop. Catch weights. Entry free. Purse \$27.50 of which \$7.50 to second and \$5.00 to third. One-half mile on the flat. Winner: 2d Cavalry's *Telephone*, ch,g,8, by *Sunference-Central Girl* (TB). Trainer: Major V. Wilson, 2d Cavalry.

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Saskatchewan</i> , br,g,5		Sgt. Johemiak	Second Cavalry
<i>Tom Boy</i> , ch,m,9		Pvt. Jolly	Second Cavalry
<i>Gun Powder</i> , ch,g,10		Cpl. Lotshaw	Second Cavalry
<i>Timeset</i> , ch,g,12	2	Cpl. Hackworth	Second Cavalry
<i>Elvins</i> , b,g,9		Sgt. Klotz	Second Cavalry
<i>Kitty</i> , b,m,6	3	Pvt. Nevins	Second Cavalry
<i>Dyboy</i> , b,g,7		Pvt. Kirk	Second Cavalry
<i>Pat</i> , br,g,9		Pvt. Burnett	Second Cavalry
<i>Hammer</i> , br,g,11		Cpl. Armstrong	Second Cavalry
<i>Telephone</i> , ch,g,8	1	1st Sgt. Fair	Second Cavalry
<i>Fool's Own</i> , b,g,6		Cpl. Dean	Second Cavalry

*Saskatchewan* and *Tom Boy* gave trouble at the post. *Tom Boy* broke fast. *Saskatchewan* on leading by two lengths at the half field bunched coming into stretch. Anybody's race. *Telephone* won driving by a nose. Time: 54 9/10 seconds. Scratched: *Gentlemen*, *Jim*, and *Flossie*.

### FOURTH RACE

*The Cavalry Memorial Steeplechase*.—For four year olds and upward owned by the government, owned by officers of the United States Army, or by members of a recognized hunt. Riders to be amateurs acceptable to the executive committee. Half breeds to carry 160 pounds; thoroughbreds to carry 170 pounds. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. About two and one-half miles over brush. Winner: Cavalry School's *Danbab*, ch,g,7, by *Dan IV-Babette*. Trainer: 1st Lieut. E. H. S. Carns, Cavalry.

STARTERS	WEIGHT	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Frock Coat</i> , br,g,6	170	3	Frank Blake	Mayo Ranch
<i>French Wrack</i> , b,g,7	170		Lt. Waters	Mayo Ranch
<i>Conservator</i> , ch,g,6	170	2	Mr. Wm. Lane	J. Kempar
<i>Dark Day</i> , br,g,8	170		Lt. Sanford	Cavalry School
<i>Inevitable</i> , b,g,8	170		Lt. Cairns	Cavalry School
<i>Broncho Dan</i> , ch,g,7	160		Lt. Symroski	Cavalry School
<i>Danbab</i> , ch,g,7	170	1	Lt. McClelland	Cavalry School
<i>Talus</i> , b,g,9	160		Major Olsen	Cavalry School
<i>Dolly Crump</i> , b,m,A	170		Lt. Brewster	Field Art School

Broke fast, *Danbab* took lead. *Inevitable* passed *Danbab* on fourth brush, *Danbab* regained lead, one length ahead at sixth brush. *Danbab*, *Inevitable*, and *Dolly Crump*, 1-2-3 at seventh brush. *Danbab* well out in front at eighth brush. *Conservator* moving up fast into second place. At tenth brush *Conservator* continued to gain on *Danbab*. At eleventh brush *Frock Coat* went into third place. *Danbab* won easily by four lengths with *Conservator* and *Frock Coat* fighting for second. Time: 5:10 2/5. Scratched: *Flying Petrel*, *Golden Sunshine*, *King Live*, *Mineral*, and *Adjustable*.

### FIFTH RACE

*Slipaway's Challenge*.—For four year olds and upward owned and ridden by officers of the United States Army or by members of their families. Weight 155 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. One-half mile on the flat. Winner: Henry Burnett's *Startria*, br,m,6, by *Start-Peach Star*. Trainer: Captain E. M. Burnett, Cavalry.

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Startria</i> , br,m,6	1	Capt. Burnett	Henry Burnett
<i>Pee Wee</i> , ch,g,15		Major Olsen	Major Olsen
<i>Danzon</i> , b,g,14	2	Lt. Kleitz	Lieutenant Kleitz
<i>Pompano</i> , ch,m,10	3	Lt. Whipple	Lieutenant Wagstaff
<i>Burdandette</i> , br,m,11		Lt. Symroski	Captain Ellis
<i>Beau Brummel</i> , br,g,9		Lt. Cairns	Lieutenant Cairns

*Startria* and *Beau Brummel* acting up at the post. Broke fast, *Startria* leading. Coming into home stretch *Danzon* made a bid for first place. *Startria* won easily by three lengths. Time: 55 1/5 seconds. *Danson*, second, over *Pompano* by three lengths. Scratched: *Panky June Bug*, *Home Gallop*.

### SIXTH RACE

*The Joe Deceive Steeplechase*.—For four year olds and upward owned by the government or by officers of the United States Army. Riders to be officers. Entries acceptable to Executive Committee. Half breeds to carry 160 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. About two miles over brush. Winner: Captain Gunby's *Wildey*, b,g,12, by *Balustrade-Dot*. Trainer: Captain Gunby, 84th Field Artillery.

STARTERS	WEIGHT	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Wildey</i> , b,g,12	170	1	Capt. Gunby	Captain Gunby
<i>Ricochet</i> , b,m,A	160	3	Lt. Brewster	F. A. School
<i>Crow's Nest</i> , ch,g,8	160		Lt. Oakes	F. A. School
<i>Mineral</i> , b,m,A	160	2	Capt. Burnett	Ft. Leavenworth
<i>Argyle</i> , b,g,A	160		Lt. Kleitz	Cavalry School
<i>Norwegian</i> , b,g,A	160		Lt. Hollingsworth	Cavalry School
<i>Amiss</i> , b,g,A	160		Lt. Adamson	Cavalry School
<i>Frances Biddle</i> , b, m, A	170		Lt. Nall	Cavalry School

*Amiss* took lead and held it to the fourth brush. *Amiss* fell at fourth brush, *Wildey* going into lead. *Norwegian* lost course near fourth brush turned back. At fifth brush *Wildey* in lead, followed closely by riderless *Amiss*. At sixth brush *Frances Biddle* moved into second place. *Frances Biddle* fell at eighth brush. Rider (Lieut. Nall) remounted and *Frances Biddle* finished race. At ninth brush *Mineral* went into second place. At eleventh brush *Wildey*, well out in front, almost fell. *Wildey* won pulled up. Time: 4:24 3/5. Scratched: *Prince*, *Norin*, *Waldron*.

## SEVENTH RACE

*The Colonel Arthur J. Elliott Memorial Point-to-Point.*  
—Open to horses ridden by members of the Fort Leavenworth, Fort Sill, and Fort Riley hunts. Horses to be qualified hunters. Weight 170 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. The winner to receive possession for one year of the cup presented by the officers of the 379th Field Artillery and also permanent possession of a silver trophy. Trophy or plate to second and third. The hunt to which the winner belongs will hold the renewal of this race in 1938. About three and one-half miles over timber. Winner: Cavalry School's *Sparker*, b,g,aged, by *Ft McLeod-Florence Campbell*. Trainer: 1st Lieutenant E. H. J. Carns, Cavalry.

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Highland Chief</i> , br,g,A		Major Coe	Field Art. School
<i>Amero</i> , bl,g,A		Lt. George	Field Art. School
<i>Sparker</i> , b,g,A	1	Lt. Sanford	Cavalry School
<i>Reno Flambeau</i> , ch,g,7		Lt. Carns	Cavalry School
<i>Citizenship</i> , b,g,7	2	Lt. Waters	Cavalry School
<i>Burnt</i> , br,g,A	3	Lt. Wright	Cavalry School
<i>Danavarre</i> , ch,g,A		Lt. Miller	Lieut. W. Miller

*Danavaree* and *Reno Flambeau* gave trouble at the post. *Reno Flambeau* leading at first fence, followed by *Sparker*. At third fence *Highland Chief* moved into second place, *Sparker* third. Fourth fence *Highland Chief* took lead, *Reno Flambeau* second. At fifth fence *Reno Flambeau* took lead setting a terrific pace. Maintained lead to ninth fence when passed by *Highland Chief*, *Sparker* still third. At fourteenth fence *Highland Chief* led by four lengths, *Reno Flambeau* second, six lengths ahead of *Sparker*. *Reno Flambeau* fell at fifteenth fence. At seventeenth fence *Highland Chief* fell, *Sparker* taking the lead. *Sparker* won easily by six lengths. Time: 8:8 4/5. Scratched: *Harlem Sam* and *Danbab*.

E. C. JOHNSTON,  
Captain, Cavalry,  
Clerk of the Course.  
R. V. MURPHY,  
Captain, Infantry,  
Clerk of the Course.

PIERRE LORILLARD, JR.,  
Colonel,  
Judge.

WILFRED M. BLUNT,  
Lieut. Colonel, Cavalry,  
Judge.

WILLIAM M. GRIMES,  
Lieut. Colonel, 2d Cavalry,  
Judge.

Riverside Race Track, June 2, 1937

Weather: Hot; muggy; heavy rain the night before.  
Course: Muddy.

## FIRST RACE

*The Indian.*—For four year olds and upwards, government owned, ridden by enlisted men of the 9th Cavalry. Limited to two entries per stable of the Academic Division. Catch weights. Entry free. Purse \$27.50 of which \$7.50 to second and \$5.00 to third. One-half mile on the flat. Winner: Cavalry School's *Sailor Girl*, b,m,8,

by *Main Mast-Frances Lope*. Trainer: Corporal Henry McGill, 9th Cavalry.

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Reno Allover</i> , ch,g,12		Pvt. E. Sockwell	Cavalry School
<i>Sailor Girl</i> , b,m,8	1	Pvt. Joe Irvin	Cavalry School
<i>Laddie</i> , b,g,A		Pvt. V. Bell	Cavalry School
<i>Sumptress</i> , b,m,9		Pvt. Justice	Cavalry School
<i>Mad Neill</i> , b,g,7		Pvt. Coker	Cavalry School
<i>Neophyte</i> , br,g,8		Pvt. Hall	Cavalry School
<i>Reno Girl</i> , ch,m,6	2	Pvt. Bowles	Cavalry School
<i>Bonny Kit</i> , b,m,6	3	Cpl. Lilly	Cavalry School
<i>Trampson</i> , b,g,9		Pvt. W. Brown	Cavalry School
<i>Lassie</i> , b,m,14		Pvt. Howard	Cavalry School
<i>Davy John</i> , ch,g,8		Pvt. Velgrave	Cavalry School
<i>Cautiborn</i> , ch,g,7		Pvt. Holmes	Cavalry School
<i>Flying By</i> , bl,g,8		Pvt. Austin	Cavalry School

*Reno Allover* broke fast. *Sailor Girl* close on his heels. *Sailor Girl* in the lead at the half-way mark. At the head of the scratch *Reno Girl* and *Bonny Kit* fighting hard for second place. *Sailor Girl* won by one length, with *Reno Girl* second, three lengths ahead of *Bonny Kit*. Time: 58 2/5 seconds. Scratched: *Alice Ann*.

## SECOND RACE

*Elkin L. Franklin Memorial Steeplechase.*—For four year olds and upward, owned by the government, by officers of the United States Army, or by members of a recognized hunt. Riders to be amateurs. Entries acceptable to the Executive Committee. Half bred to carry 160 pounds, thoroughbreds, 170 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. About two miles over brush. Winner: United States Government's *Norwegian*, b,g,aged, by *Northcliff-Unk*. Trainer: 1st Lieut. E. H. J. Carns, Cavalry.

STARTERS	WEIGHT	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Norwegian</i> , b,g,A	160	1	Lt. Hollingsworth	Cavalry School
<i>Amiss</i> , b,g,A	160	2	Lt. Symorski	84th Field Art.
<i>Argyle</i> , b,g,A	160		Lt. Cairns	Cavalry School
<i>Crow's Nest</i> , ch,g,8	160	3	Lt. J. Oakes	F. A. School
<i>Harlem Sam</i> , ch,g,A	170		Lt. Brewster	F. A. School

*Amiss* took lead at the start, *Crow's Nest* and *Harlem Sam* close behind. *Amiss* leading at second brush, *Norwegian* moving into second place, *Argyle* third. At eighth brush *Norwegian* took lead from *Amiss*, *Harlem Sam* third. *Crow's Nest* passed *Harlem Sam* for third place at eleventh brush. *Norwegian* won easily by six lengths. Time: 4:37 2/5. Scratched: *Ricochet*.

## THIRD RACE

*The Rimrock.*—For four year olds and upward, government owned, ridden by enlisted men of the 2d Cavalry and 84th Field Artillery. Limited to four entries from each of the two organizations. Catch weights. Entry free. Purse \$27.50 of which \$7.50 to second and \$5.00 to third. Three-fourths mile on the flat. Winner: 2d Cavalry's *Timeset*, ch,g,12, by *Set Back-Princess Olga*. Trainer: Captain G. B. Rogers, 2d Cavalry.

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Sylvia</i> , ch,m,6		Pvt. Helms	2d Cavalry
<i>Telephone</i> , ch,g,8	2	1st Sgt. Fair	2d Cavalry
<i>Domino</i> , b,g,5		Pvt. Sleeper	U. S. Govt.
<i>Timeset</i> , ch,g,12	1	Cpl. Hockworth	2d Cavalry
<i>Sis</i> , ch,m,9		Pvt. Noel	U. S. Govt.
<i>Kitty</i> , b,m,6	3	Pvt. Nevins	U. S. Govt.
<i>Cry Baby</i> , ch,g,7		Pvt. Brigham	U. S. Govt.
<i>Elvins</i> , b,g,9		Sgt. Klotz	U. S. Govt.

*Kitty* and *Domino* out in front at the start. *Timeset* starts moving up fast and takes lead coming into stretch.

Telephone passed Kitty and Elvin in the last 50 yards to take second place. Timeset by four lengths; second place by a head. Time 1:28. Scratched: None.

## FOURTH RACE

**Cavalry School Hunt Steeplechase.**—For four year olds and upward, owned by the government, by officers of the United States Army or by members of a recognized hunt. Riders to be amateurs acceptable to the Executive Committee. Half breds to carry 160 pounds; thoroughbreds 170 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. About two miles over brush. Winner: Captain Gunby's *Wildey*, b,g,12, by *Balustrade-Dot*. Trainer: Captain T. Gunby, 84th Field Artillery.

STARTERS	WEIGHT	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Danavarre</i> , ch,g,A	170		Lt. W. Miller	Lieut. W. Miller
<i>Wildey</i> , b,g,12	170	1	Capt. Gunby	Capt. Gunby
<i>Dolly Crump</i> , b,m,A	170		Lt. George	U. S. Govt.
<i>Golden Sunshine</i> , ch,m,A	170		Lt. J. Oakes	F. A. School
<i>Ricochet</i> , b,m,A	160		Lt. Brewster	F. A. School
<i>Frances Biddle</i> , b,m,A	170	2	Lt. Nall	2d Cavalry
<i>French Wrack</i> , b,g,7	170		Mr. Blake	Mayo Ranch
<i>Mineral</i> , b,m,A	160	3	Major Olsen	Cavalry School

*Dolly Crump* broke fast. *Mineral* in lead at first brush, remainder of field bunched. *French Wrack* leading over second brush. *Wildey* and *French Wrack* neck and neck at the third. *French Wrack* pulled ahead. *Wildey* again tied with *French Wrack* at fifth. *Wildey* leading by one length at sixth. *French Wrack* second, *Dolly Crump* third. *Wildey's* lead four lengths at eighth, *Dolly Crump* crowding *French Wrack*. At ninth brush *Wildey* leading by six lengths, *Dolly Crump* moved into second place. *Dolly Crump* and *French Wrack* fell at the tenth brush, *Mineral* and *Frances Biddle* fighting for second. *Wildey* won, pulled up leading by twelve lengths. Time: 4:26 1/5. *Frances Biddle* passed *Mineral* for second place in last thirty yards. Scratched: *Burnt*.

## FIFTH RACE

**Olympic Point-to-Point.**—For green chargers regularly assigned to the Advanced Equitation Class, to be ridden by members of that class. Half breds to carry 160 pounds; thoroughbreds 170 pounds. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. About two miles over brush. Winner: Cavalry School's *Dark Plume*, br,m,6, by *Fitzgibbon-Brown Plume*. Trainer: 1st Lieut. P. D. Harkins, Cavalry.

STARTERS	WEIGHT	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Reno Gladness</i> , ch,m,6	170		Lt. Wright	Cavalry School
<i>Gabby Scamp</i> , ch,m,6	170	3	Lt. Licherie	Cavalry School
<i>Dark Plume</i> , br,m,6	170	1	Lt. Sanford	Cavalry School
<i>Uscita Paavo</i> , bl,m,6	170		Lt. Chandler	Cavalry School
<i>Reno Granite</i> , ch,g,6	170	2	Lieut. Waters	Cavalry School
<i>Coffee Cake</i> , gr,m,6	170		Lt. Mather	Cavalry School
<i>Glorious</i> , ch,m,6	170		Lt. Taylor	Cavalry School

Beautiful start. *Glorious* took lead. First brush—*Uscita Paavo*, *Coffee Cake*, *Glorious*. *Coffee Cake* fell. Second brush—*Uscita Paavo*, *Dark Plume*, *Gabby Scamp*. Third brush—same order. Fourth brush—*Uscita Paavo*, *Dark Plume* tied, *Gabby Scamp*. Fifth brush—same order. Sixth brush—*Dark Plume*, *Gabby Scamp*. Seventh brush—*Reno Gladness*, *Dark Plume*. Eighth brush—*Reno Gladness*, *Dark Plume* tied, *Gabby Scamp*. Ninth brush—*Dark Plume*, *Reno Gladness*, *Gabby Scamp*.

Tenth brush—*Dark Plume*, *Gabby Scamp*. Eleventh brush—*Dark Plume*, *Gabby Scamp*, *Reno Granite* tied. Twelfth brush—same order. Finish—*Dark Plume* by one and one-half lengths. Time: 4:50. *Reno Granite* a strong second. *Gabby Scamp* third. Scratched: *Laine*, *Canolito*, *Reno Grandeur*, *French Bouquet*.

## SIXTH RACE

**The Commandant.**—For three year olds and upward, owned by the government, by officers of the United States Army, or by members of a recognized hunt. Riders to be amateurs acceptable to the Executive Committee. Weight 135 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. Three-fourths mile on the flat. Winner: Cavalry School's *Aeronauta*, b,m,A, by *Out of the Way-Keechie*. Trainer: 1st Lieut. E. H. J. Carns, Cavalry.

STARTERS	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Burnadette</i> , br,m,11		Lt. Symroski	Capt. O. Ellis
<i>Model Girl</i> , b,m,8		Capt. Gunby	84th Field Art.
<i>Plateau</i> , b,m,5		Lt. Costain	84th Field Art.
<i>Startria</i> , br,m,6	3	Capt. Burnett	Mr. H. Burnett
<i>Danson</i> , b,g,14		Lieut. Kleitz	Lieut. Kleitz
<i>Pompano</i> , ch,m,10		Lieut. Whipple	Lieut. Wagstaff
<i>Henry</i> , b,g,6		Capt. Noble	2d Cavalry
<i>Aeronauta</i> , b,m,A	1	Lt. Adamson	Cavalry School
<i>Captain Shore</i> , ch,g,A	2	Lieut. Nall	Cavalry School
<i>Fairy Princess</i> , ch,m,A		Mr. Wheeler	Cavalry School
<i>Adjustable</i> , b,m,6		Mr. Miller	Cavalry School
<i>Gunpowder</i> , ch,g,10		Lt. Cairns	2d Cavalry

*Captain Shore*, *Adjustable*, and *Model Girl* acting up at the post. *Henry* took lead, field bunched. *Aeronauta*, driving hard went into first place followed by *Gunpowder*, *Captain Shore* close third. In a driving finish *Aeronauta* won by half a length over *Captain Shore*. *Startria* third. Time: 1:25 3/5. Scratched: None.

## SEVENTH RACE

**The Cavalier.**—For four year olds and upward, owned by the government, by officers of the United States Army, or by members of a recognized hunt. Half breds to carry 160 pounds; thoroughbreds, 170 pounds. No allowances. Entry free. Plate or trophy to first, second, and third. About two and one-half miles over brush. Winner: Mayo Ranch's *Frock Coat*, br,g,6, by *Hisselt* out of *Ava Maria*. Trainer: Mr. Frank Blake.

STARTERS	WEIGHT	FINISH	RIDER	OWNER
<i>Don Bab</i> , ch,g,7	170	2	Lt. McClelland	Cavalry School
<i>Amero</i> , bl,g,A	170		Lt. George	F. A. School
<i>Sparker</i> , b,g,A	170	3	Lt. S. M. Sanford	Cavalry School
<i>Inevitable</i> , b,g,8	170		Lt. Cairns	Cavalry School
<i>Frock Coat</i> , br,g,6	170	1	Mr. Frank Blake	Mayo Ranch

*Amero* and *Inevitable* off to an early lead. *Inevitable* still in lead at second brush with *Dan Bab* close on his heels. *Dan Bab* caught up with *Inevitable* at third brush, with the Mayo Ranch entry, *Frock Coat*, ridden by Mr. Frank Blake closing up. *Dan Bab*, first, *Frock Coat*, third at fourth brush. No change over the fifth and sixth. *Frock Coat* closing on *Inevitable* at seventh brush. At eighth brush *Dan Bab* leading *Frock Coat* by five lengths, *Sparker* third. Over ninth, tenth, and eleventh brushes *Frock Coat* closing on *Dan Bab*, *Sparker* a poor third. *Frock Coat* on *Dan Bab's* heels over the twelfth and thirteenth brushes. *Dan Bab* and *Frock Coat* over the fourteenth brush together. Finish: *Frock Coat* by a nose. Time: 5:15 2/5. Scratched: *Highland Chief*.



---

## With the Mechanized Cavalry

---

### Horse and Mechanized Cavalry Maneuvers at Fort Knox, Kentucky

ONE of the most interesting exercises of the training of the civilian components and the regular army occurred at Fort Knox during the early part of August. It involved maneuvers of the 7th Cavalry Brigade (Mechanized) and the 54th Cavalry Brigade (Horse) which started on Thursday, July 30th. The 54th Cavalry Brigade was commanded by Brigadier General Newell C. Bolton, of Cleveland, and consisted of the 107th Cavalry, Ohio National Guard, commanded by Colonel Woods King, of Cleveland, and the 123d Cavalry, Kentucky National Guard, commanded by Colonel Henry J. Stites, of Louisville, Kentucky. The 54th Cavalry Brigade (BLUES) opposed the 7th Cavalry Brigade (REDS), commanded by Brigadier General Daniel Van Voorhis.

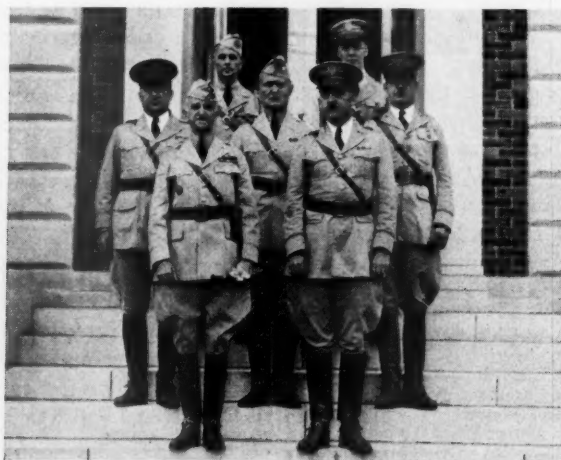
The exercises started at daylight, July 30th, with the dispatch of observation planes and fast mechanized reconnaissance vehicles, equipped with machine guns and radio, from the bivouacs of both opposing forces, to locate and feel out the hostile dispositions. Shortly thereafter the horse cavalry moved out of its bivouac at Fort Knox in the direction of the mechanized cavalry, ready to combat this newest of modern arms. Both "Red" and "Blue"

forces were supported by observation aviation and artillery. Throughout the maneuvers the two commanders were in touch with their advanced reconnaissance elements, with the airplanes overhead, and with all subordinate units of their respective commands, by means of two-way radio, voice or key.

Because of the modern equipment participating in this exercise it should prove of considerable value to the cavalry arm of the service, which embraces both horse and mechanized cavalry. The maneuvers were of particular interest in that they provided one of the few opportunities for horse cavalry and mechanized cavalry to operate against one another.

(It is expected to publish the details of this maneuver in the September-October issue of *The CAVALRY JOURNAL*.)

On July 30th, Major General William E. Cole, commanding the Fifth Corps Area, with headquarters at Fort Hayes, Columbus, Ohio, and embracing all army components in the states of Ohio, Indiana, Kentucky, and West Virginia, arrived at Fort Knox to inspect the activities of the 54th Cavalry Brigade. General Cole witnessed the 54th Cavalry Brigade mounted review, held on Friday morning, July 31st.



**OHIO REGULAR ARMY AND NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY GENERALS SERVE TOGETHER AT FORT KNOX**  
FIRST ROW: Brigadier General Daniel Van Voorhis (left) of Zanesville, Ohio, commanding the regular army 7th Cavalry Brigade (Mechanized), which is the only Mechanized Cavalry in the United States Army, and Brigadier General Newell C. Bolton (right) of Cleveland, Ohio, commanding the 54th Cavalry Brigade (Horse) composed of the Ohio and Kentucky National Guard Cavalry. The 7th Cavalry Brigade (Mechanized) is permanently stationed at Fort Knox, Kentucky, while the 54th Cavalry Brigade (Horse) arrived at Fort Knox this week-end for two weeks' active duty.

SECOND ROW (left to right): Major M. J. Meyer, Plans and Training Officer, 54th Cavalry Brigade; Lt. Colonel W. D. Crittenger, Plans and Training Officer, 7th Cavalry Brigade; Captain J. S. McCasland, Supply Officer, 54th Cavalry Brigade.

THIRD ROW (left to right): Captain G. W. West, Aide to General Van Voorhis, Lieutenant A. K. Heiner, Aide to General Bolton.



A REVIEW OF THE BREEDING AND THE PERFORMANCES OF THE OUTSTANDING THOROUGHBREDS OF THE YEAR ENGAGED IN RACING, STEEPLECHASING, AND HUNT RACING—1936. By John Hervey (Salvator). (Introduction by Herbert Bayard-Swoope.) Sagamore Press, New York, N. Y. \$5.00.

*Reviewed by Lieutenant Colonel John F. Wall, Cavalry*

Anyone at all familiar with the Thoroughbred and who claims an interest in the history of his accomplishments, realizes our good fortune in having "Salvator" continue his interesting, instructive, and accurate writings. In *American Race Horses of 1936* he has given us under a single cover an analysis of our best horses on the flat and something of the steeplechasers and selected horses in hunt meets. This work includes an intimate history of the particular horse and those personalities in closest association with him. In the pages of the book are found the photograph of the selected horses, their pedigrees, an intelligent recital of performance and race charts. Interwoven, is a pen picture of the Thoroughbred industry, a history of sales, of track management, the trainer, and jockey. All of this is presented in "Salvator's" always delightful and fascinating style, portraying throughout that so long as we have the Thoroughbred and men interested in his welfare, romance remains with us.

It is understood that the publication was hastily conceived and this, no doubt, accounts for the expectation that its arrangement will be improved upon. Perhaps, in instances, better photographs than those used are available; however, they are representative of what the public is more familiar with and, in my opinion, are not seriously defective.

It may puzzle many to recognize the need of an editor for anything "Salvator" writes on the horse and just how far the province of the editor extended is not known. Perhaps the editor would be the first to insist that it ended with the arrangement, a colossal job in itself. However, in addition, we have to thank the editor for writing the excellent sections on the hunt meets and steeplechases.

It would be almost comparable to heresy in the minds of many who read most of the present-day literature on the horse, to say that the directness, clearness, attractiveness, and simplicity of "Salvator's" writings can be improved upon. *American Races Horses of 1936* is no exception. It will be enjoyed and deservedly valued. Personally, I read everything I can locate from the facile pen of its author, whose great knowledge of the Thoroughbred is

always presented within the bounds of common sense justified by easily recognized reason. Would that it were possible that all of his writings could be gotten together in as convenient form as this new book—all in all, a most helpful and readable work.

\* \* \*

OUR GALLANT MADNESS. By Frederick Palmer. Garden City, New York: Doubleday, Doran and Company. 320 pages. \$2.50.

When Frederick Palmer returned home from the Western Front in the winter of 1915-16 he was amazed to find so many of his countrymen behaving like Europeans instead of Americans.

War propaganda Mr. Palmer understood. He knew that neither side had a monopoly on all the wrongs or all the right. He knew that neither could afford to be entirely truthful. What amazed him was that so many Americans believed all that was said, either by one side or the other. They seemed unable to steer a straight course through the fog by the aid of the compass of their own national interest.

The vocal elements of our people were lining up as if they were French or English on the one hand, or German on the other. Our finance and trade were already deeply involved with the Allies, and the Germans, coolly weighing the issues in their race against the blockade, determined on unrestricted submarine warfare and sent the Zimmermann note to Mexico in the effort to create a diversion on our southern border.

When, in 1917, our slowly-mounting sense of outrage pushed us over the dam, we went into the war under the spell of an idealism which demanded no commitments from the Allies. "This was the redeeming feature of this case of war madness. We believed we had a mission." This was our "gallant madness."

The stamp of the Regular Army was on the AEF, and it was the stamp that Sylvanus Thayer had laid upon West Point. It saved perhaps double our casualties, and it gave us General Pershing's unswerving purpose to build a great army of our own.

In the end Pershing's strength and the AEF's enthusiasm brought victory. Had the war gone on into 1919, Palmer believes that Pershing's personal qualities, his favorable position as a neutral between France and England, and his youthful and powerful army would have made him the allied Generalissimo.

The war won, we found the old world unchanged. We paid the costs and got nothing.

Should war come again we can keep out of it only if we give up freedom of the seas and keep our ships and goods at home. We will suffer. Will we suffer less if we go in? But "Europe still influences our ideology out of keeping with our adult national self-respect." We take sides too fervently for Edward or for Baldwin, for Spanish loyalists or insurgents—for everything but our own interests. Our first effort, now and for the future, should be to avoid aligning ourselves on one side or the other as if we were embattled foreigners; our business is to study how to be Americans.

E. S. J.

EUROPE IN ARMS. By Captain B. H. Liddell Hart. London: Faber and Faber, 1937. 342 pages; Index. \$2.50.

This is the most judicious work of its kind yet to flow from the ever-ready pen of Liddell Hart. It is thought-provoking and stimulating. In a day when any war is likely to become everybody's war it should be digested by those whose business it is to wage war as well as by those whose business it is to stave it off.

The keynote of the book is the increasing importance of quality over quantity in all the diverse realms of warfare, whether in policy, personnel, matériel, or command. Above all, quality is important in the method by which we go about either preventing wars or conducting them. A scientific spirit of inquiry is imperative if we are to succeed in forestalling wars or of conducting them with any reasonable prospect of a victory which will not be ruinous to the victor—if there be a victor. Although the range of the book is wide, this theme, especially in the realm of brains, runs through it all.

There is a chapter giving an excellent summary of the armies of Europe; one on British rearmament; an interesting suggestion of an army motor reserve; a German view of the next war; one on the relation of the war in Abyssinia to the future of warfare; and a discussion whether another war would end civilization. Modern warfare on land and sea is discussed comprehensively from every point of view.

Liddell Hart's suggestions follow generally the lines taken by his Eighteenth Century predecessors. Noting that "the exploration of war as a scientific subject has scarcely begun," and that "the trend of warfare places an increasing premium on intelligence," he would seek out the best available brains and organize them so as to place at the disposal of the armed forces all resources of scientific knowledge and invention. Some methods must be devised by which to calculate quickly and accurately the movements of elements endowed with greatly variant rates of speed in order that we may be able to control them. We must decentralize, not only the army, but the centers of its supply. The radio makes it technically possible to control many small, fast-moving units on a broad front.

A system of selection and a system of training com-

manders must be devised to enable them to think in new terms—of dominating areas instead of capturing lines, of paralyzing instead of "crushing" the enemy. They must visualize "concentration of force" in terms far removed from the existing conception and along lines which we might call "Neo-Napoleonic" or "Super-Napoleonic." Readers who are familiar with Liddell Hart's writings will not be astonished to find that he questions whether those in charge of military establishments today will have the vision and the freedom from the restraint of conservatism to find a satisfactory solution to these problems.

It is not alone in the theater of war that present-day conditions demand a fresh and broader outlook: the security of a nation depends more than ever before on an understanding of industrial, political, and sociological conditions and upon a new evaluation of geographical factors as affected by recent mechanical developments. And the problems involved in the successful coordinating of land, sea, and air forces under modern conditions demands the best thought that we can find and organize.

The author has stated a number of thought-provoking problems and has united them into a coherent conception of modern war, and has thus produced a stimulus to thinking which is so important that a copy ought to be furnished each soldier with the next issue of Class I supplies.

J. M. S.

TOWARDS ARMAGEDDON. By Major General J. F. C. Fuller. London: Lovat Dickson Limited, 1937. 241 pages; Index. \$2.50.

In this book, which was obviously written hurriedly, General Fuller presents his views of the defense of the British Empire. Whether or not any of the £1,500,000,000 to be spent by Britain on defense during the next five years will be used as General Fuller wishes remains to be seen, but all who read his book will know a great deal about the problem of Empire Defense even though they disagree with his solution.

According to General Fuller, England should have learned four lessons from the World War, namely: the increasing necessity in both war and peace for political authority, for national discipline, for economic self-sufficiency, and for scientific weapons. Upon these he formulates his solution. To profit fully by the first three lessons England would have to become a totalitarian state, and General Fuller, even though he seems to admire Hitler, does not advocate such a change. He does show how England might secure a logical and systematic continuity in her defense plans and expenditures, and how she might attain a degree of self-sufficiency. Then, too, he has some excellent advice concerning disciplinary measures that could be taken to control the civilian population, especially that of large cities during air raids. Here he is very sensible and shows that he is an astute psychologist. He draws a picture of people threatened with an air attack calmly taking a few simple and thor-



oughly understood precautionary measures. During the raid the citizenry are instructed and informed by "loud-speakers fitted up in all streets and public places" of "the course of the raid, the action of the counter-attack, etc." The picture seems fantastic but is undoubtedly sound. As General Fuller says, "when danger threatens . . . what the people want is the comfort of authority," and an informed mass is rarely a panic-stricken one.

Most of the book, however, is devoted to problems that are purely military. General Fuller is of the opinion that the next war will be decided by machines. He believes and probably correctly that "throughout history the evolution of warfare has always followed the development of civilization." And, hence, because in our day the development of the airplane is man's most striking scientific achievement, the airplane is to General Fuller the master weapon. Based on this master weapon he conceives his ideal military force, which is divided into three parts: air power, sea power, and land power. The last

two are mere adjuncts of the first to supply it and to consolidate its gains. At sea the battleship is discarded, and on land the tank plays an all-important rôle. We still find infantry (foot infantry) in the land forces, but in a purely passive rôle.

Naturally in a short book the treatment of such a broad subject may be quite general. Nothing is proved, and statements are made that are extremely controversial. But herein lies its attraction for the military reader. No infantryman likes to hear that except for machine gunners his arm is only useful for line of communication jobs, but such a possibility should be considered. If the next war can be won more easily by the infantry supporting the air forces than by the fliers supporting the Doughboy, that is the way it should be won. General Fuller's book is not for the bigoted cavalryman or infantryman, but for all who are inquisitive or imaginative it is heartily recommended.

J. L. W.

## Cavalry in the Foreign Press

Reviewed by Sergeant F. W. Merten, DEML

### SOVIET RUSSIA

RECONNAISSANCE ELEMENTS OF A CAVALRY DIVISION IN AN ENCOUNTER WITH HOSTILE MECHANIZED FORCES. (*Militärwissenschaftliche Mitteilungen*, Vienna, July, 1937, from *Krasnaya Konnitsa*, Moscow.)

The cavalry of the Soviet Union conducted an exercise last year with the object of determining the most suitable organization of the reconnaissance elements of large cavalry units.

The situation presented in this problem was as follows: Hostile mechanized forces had broken through the front. A cavalry division, held in reserve, was assigned the mission of occupying a defensive position about 12 miles in rear of the gap and blocking the hostile advance. The commander of the cavalry division despatched three reconnaissance detachments in the direction of the enemy to reconnoiter the hostile mechanized forces and delay their advance. Meanwhile, the remainder of the cavalry division went into position as ordered and commenced to entrench.

Each of the three reconnaissance detachments was organized as follows: 1 rifle squadron; 3 heavy and 4 antitank machine guns; 2 antitank guns; 1 chemical warfare section (100 smoke bombs); 1 pioneer platoon (50 fougasses and motorized saw). The hostile forces engaged in the breakthrough comprised three tank battalions.

The reconnaissance detachments successfully delayed the advance of the hostile tanks by making extensive use of fougasses (mine) and smoke bombs, erecting obstacles and demolishing small bridges. The enemy required three hours to advance seven miles; this afforded the cavalry division time to fortify its line of positions.

The Chief of Cavalry of the Red Army has announced conclusions drawn from this exercise as follows: The reconnaissance detachment of a large cavalry unit should consist of: one or, not exceeding, 2 squadrons; 4 antitank machine guns; 1 battery of artillery; 1 company of tanks; 1 platoon of engineers (pioneers) equipped with mines; 1 chemical warfare section; 1 or 2 motorcyclists.

The distance between the reconnaissance detachment and the main body of the cavalry must not exceed from 5 to 7 miles. The average rate of advance of the reconnaissance elements may be estimated at from 3 to 4 mph. The cavalry patrols should announce the approach of hostile tanks by firing rocket signals.

A reconnaissance detachment of this strength is considered strong enough to combat hostile reconnaissance forces or three or four hostile tank companies.

### GREAT BRITAIN

THE REORGANIZATION OF THE BRITISH REGULAR ARMY. (*Militär-Wochenblatt*, Berlin, July 2, 1937.)

After several years of experimentation, Great Britain

has definitely decided on a new organization of her Regular Army. The changes that are now under way consist mainly of the reorganization of the infantry division and the creation of the "mobile division," that is, the mechanized cavalry division.

Whereas formerly the British infantry division comprised 3 brigades of 4 battalions each, it will henceforth consist of 3 brigades of 3 battalions each. All trains will be motorized, mainly with  $\frac{3}{4}$ -ton trucks.

The division artillery, likewise motorized, will be equipped throughout with a new field piece, which is a combination gun and howitzer. This "gunhowitzer" is said to be of about 80-mm. calibre and possess a range of approximately six miles.

There will be four mechanized cavalry regiments for reconnaissance purposes. These regiments will include light tanks, armored cars, armored machine gun carriers and motorized rifle troops.

The "mobile division" (mechanized cavalry division) will be composed of 2 "mobile brigades," 1 light tank regiment, 1 armored car squadron, motorized artillery and the requisite special troops. The "mobile brigade" will be organized as follows: 2 squadrons of light cavalry tanks (from 50 to 60 light tanks each) and 1 battalion of motorized rifles.

The light tank regiment of the "mobile division" will include 1 battalion of light tanks and 3 battalions of medium tanks, with a total of some 130 light tanks, 60 medium tanks and 24 close support tanks. The latter type of tank is equipped with a high-angle fire gun and an ample supply of smoke shells for the elimination of hostile antitank guns.

The horsed cavalry regiments of the British Regular Army are designated primarily for service in India.

### NORWAY

#### THE REORGANIZATION OF THE NORWEGIAN ARMY. (*Militär-Wochenblatt*, Berlin, June 25, 1937.)

Prior to reorganization, the Norwegian army consisted of 16 regiments and 2 independent battalions of infantry, 3 regiments of cavalry, 3 regiments of field artillery, 2 battalions of mountain artillery, 5 battalions of fortress artillery, 1 battalion of antiaircraft artillery, 3 battalions of engineers, 9 companies of signal troops, and 6 companies of motorized trains and other special troops.

While the cavalry regiments will continue to exist, the infantry and artillery will be organized into battalions and mixed brigades; the latter will replace the infantry division.

The cavalry regiment comprises: Regimental headquarters and trains, 1 platoon of pioneers, 3 rifle squadrons, 1 heavy machine gun squadron of 9 guns, 1 railway squadron, and 1 armored car squadron of 9 armored cars.

The outstanding feature of this new organization is that, with the exception of the armored car elements of the cavalry regiments, no provisions are made for tanks or antitank weapons.

### CZECHOSLOVAKIA

#### CZECH VIEWS ON MECHANIZED CAVALRY. (*Militär-Wochenblatt*, Berlin, June 11, 1937.)

Appreciating that mechanized units cannot be improvised at the outbreak of a war, Czech military authorities demand that such units be completely organized in time of peace. In order to be available for immediate employment in covering the mobilization, it is necessary at all times to maintain the mechanized forces at practically war strength.

The Czechoslovak army distinguishes between:

- (1) Mechanized army cavalry divisions;
- (2) Corps reconnaissance units;
- (3) Division reconnaissance units.

(1) The organization of the mechanized divisions that are to be employed directly by the Army Commander is proposed as follows:

- (a) Two regiments of *portée* cavalry and 1 battalion of *portée* infantry, inclusive of antitank and antiaircraft guns;
- (b) One regiment of motorized artillery (2 battalions of 100-mm. howitzers and 1 battalion of 80-mm. guns);
- (c) One mechanized regiment of 1 armored car troop and 2 tank battalions (3 tank companies and 1 armored car troop each);
- (d) One motorized antitank company and 1 antiaircraft battery;
- (e) One motorized engineer company;
- (f) One motorized signal company.

The tactical employment of these large mechanized units contemplates invasions into hostile territory to interfere with the enemy's mobilization; defense against invasions by the enemy; and cover of the mobilization.

During an advance, the missions of the mechanized cavalry are to be similar to those of the horsed army cavalry. The mechanized units may be assigned distant reconnaissance and security missions. They may take early possession of important points in the terrain and are well suited for the protection of the flanks of an army.

While not equipped to attack strong hostile forces, the mechanized army cavalry may be successfully employed in envelopments, breakthroughs, and pursuit.

In defensive operations, these units are highly valuable as a mobile reserve, to reinforce the front, execute counterattacks, check a hostile breakthrough, and cover flanks and rear of the army.

The inherent speed of mechanized units renders them adaptable also to delaying action.

In a withdrawal, the mechanized cavalry may be used as a rear guard.

(2) The following suggestions are made for the organization of corps reconnaissance units:

(a) One regiment of *portée* cavalry (1 squadron on motorcycles, 1 squadron on trucks), inclusive of antitank and antiaircraft guns;

(b) One battery or battalion of motorized light field artillery (2 batteries of 100-mm. howitzers, and 1 battery of 80-mm. guns);

(c) One mechanized battalion of 2 tank companies and 1 armored car company.

(3) The organization of the division reconnaissance units is thought as follows:

(a) One squadron of horsed cavalry (3 rifle platoons), 1 heavy machine gun platoon, 1 platoon of 2 antitank guns;

(b) One cyclist battalion, with 1 antitank platoon;

(c) One tank company (2 platoons of tanks, 1 platoon of armored cars);

(d) One battery of field artillery (horse-drawn or motorized).

1 1 1

### POLAND

POLISH CAVALRY TACTICS. (*Militär-Wochenblatt*, Berlin, April 2, 1937.)

The Polish "Combat Instructions" stress the offensive and attach great importance to operations directed against the hostile flank and rear. This offers a wide field of employment to the cavalry arm which plays a vital part in the Polish Army. Particular attention is devoted also to operations involving threats directed at the friendly flank and rear by hostile cavalry and mechanized forces.

Cavalry reconnaissance is to be carried out mainly by offensive methods. The attack is to force the opponent to reveal his strength, especially that of his artillery. If the division reconnaissance unit is not strong enough to execute its mission, it must be reinforced in proper time by machine guns, armored cars, cyclists and artillery.

Cavalry is employed in all situations. Special tactics are prescribed for the combat between cavalry and infantry. Using the offensive, certain cavalry elements are to contain the enemy by frontal attack, while the greater

part of the horsed cavalry outflanks the enemy and attacks him in flank and rear. The *mounted attack* is further prescribed as an *emergency maneuver*, for situations offering an opportunity to take the enemy by surprise, and for pursuit of a retreating foe.

Infantry opposing cavalry is to take full advantage of the ground, with the view to blocking the withdrawal of the hostile cavalry. Night attacks on cavalry are considered most effective. Mixed units on the march must be separated if there is danger of a surprise attack by hostile cavalry. The artillery must be distributed by batteries over the entire column of march, and the greater part of the heavy machine guns must likewise be placed with the different companies. The importance is emphasized to inform the troops on the march of the possible appearance of hostile cavalry, in order to prevent confusion in the ranks in the event of a surprise attack by hostile cavalry.

1 1 1

### SWITZERLAND

REORGANIZATION OF THE CAVALRY. (*Schweizer Kavallerist*.)

Switzerland has decided to reorganize her military establishment, effective January 1, 1938. For the cavalry, cyclist and motorized units, the reorganization date has recently been advanced to April 1, 1937.

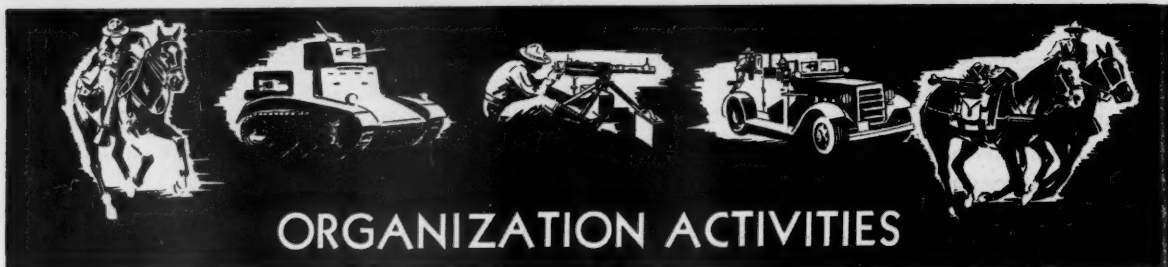
The cavalry will comprise a total of 30 squadrons of dragoons. According to the new tables of organization, the squadron will number six officers, 157 men, 155 mounts, three pack horses and two light trucks. The squadron will be divided into a headquarters platoon and three rifle platoons. Each rifle platoon will receive three light machine guns.

There will be three light brigades of two regiments each. The regiment will consist of three horsed squadrons and one cyclist battalion.

The six field (infantry) divisions will include two cavalry squadrons each. While one of them will form a part of the mixed reconnaissance detachment, the other is designated for communication service.







## 1st Cavalry (Mechanized)—Fort Knox, Ky.

COLONEL BRUCE PALMER, *Commanding*

THE months of June and July at Fort Knox were quite active with training of the civilian components in which the 1st Cavalry had a part. Ten Reserve Officers who are permanently assigned to the Regiment were on active duty at the Post from June 17th to the end of the month. Since that time two Reserve Officers have been attached for two weeks' training each. On June 24th the Machine Gun Troop gave an impressive demonstration for the O.R.C. of the ability of the half tracks to pass through wire entanglements. Demonstrations of the Regiment in the attack were given for the O.R.C. on June 29th, July 16th, and July 30th.

At the first of these demonstrations Colonel Adolf Von Schell of the German Army was present. This officer inspected the motor park and equipment of the Regiment on the following day—June 30th.

From July 4th to 17th a part of the officers of 461st and 462d Armored Car Squadrons were in the Organized Reserve Camp at Fort Knox. The equipment of the Armored Car Troop, Troop A, was turned over for their instruction.

On the 29th of July the 7th Cavalry Brigade engaged in maneuvers against the 54th Cavalry Brigade (107th Ohio and 123d Kentucky). The Horse Cavalry Regiments were assumed to have 30 antitank weapons apiece and proved most formidable opponents.

A number of troops and detachments have been absent from the Post during the two months. On June 5th Captain I. D. White and Lieutenant Loren F. Cole with a platoon of armored cars and a platoon of combat cars left for Governor's Island and West Point. A week was spent at Governor's Island where the detachment participated in the celebration taking place there. They then proceeded to West Point to assist in the training of the Cadets, returning to Fort Knox, on July 29th.

On July 18th Captain Sears, Captain Evans, and Lieutenant Lee took a detachment to Paris, Kentucky, where they participated in the Kentucky American Legion Convention Parade, returning on July 21st.

The Chief of Cavalry visited Fort Knox from June 14th to 17th. On the 14th he reviewed the entire garrison dismounted. On the 15th, the 7th Cavalry Brigade passed in Review on the road. During the remaining two days of his visit General Kromer was shown the details of the work the Brigade was doing including an inspection of the Motor Park.

A few of the many officers assigned to the Regiment during the spring have arrived. Captains R. B. Evans and C. Massey came in during June and Captain J. K. Sells and Lieutenant C. G. Dodge during July. A greater number of officers have left during this period including Colonel H. W. Baird, Lieut. Colonel A. B. Conard, Major B. H. Coiner, Major G. Cronander, Captains F. L. Ready, I. D. White, and C. V. Bromley.

## 2d Cavalry—Fort Riley, Kansas

COLONEL DORSEY R. RODNEY, *Commanding*

A TEAM consisting of Lieuts. Cairns, Stevenson, Adamson, and Whipple, 2d Cavalry, won first place in the team event of the Cavalry School Point-to-Point held last May. The course was about six miles across country with about seven fences. The individual winner, Captain J. T. Ward, of the Regular Class, averaged better than twenty-two miles an hour over the course.

In the 1937 Cavalry School Horse Show, the 2d Cavalry held its own against some of the keenest competition in this part of the country. The outstanding performer of the Regiment was without doubt, Captain Henry R. Westphalinger who won all three polo classes with his fine ponies, *Page* and *Warminster*. Captain Basil G. Thayer was a close second, winning the middle and heavy-weight hunter class with his private mount *Sunday Clothes*, and the "Road Hacks" with *Petterette*. He also rode *Petterette* on the winning Hunt Team. Lieut. D. V. Adamson won the most coveted prize of the Show when he took the Equestrian Teams Funds Sweepstakes Class from the best that Riley, Sill, and Leavenworth had to offer with the government-owned *Moro*. In the Interpost Handicap jumping, class A, Captain C. H. Noble won on *Bushnell Boy*. In the one class for enlisted men, Sgt. Klotz, Cpl. Dean, Sgt. Hunter, and Sgt. Null comprised the team that won first place for the 2d Cavalry.

Under the supervision of Captain Gordon B. Rogers, the Regiment maintains four polo teams. During the past month these teams have been engaged in active competition here and in Kansas City.

In the first official game of the season, the cadets of the New Mexico Military Institute defeated the Yellow Team in an extra period game 5-4. A few days later this team again was defeated by the Field Artillery School 12-5. On July 16 the Blue Team went to Kansas City and played a series of two games with the Kansas City Country Club losing the first game 2-4, and winning the sec-

and 5-3. The following week Kansas City returned the visit bringing a much stronger combination. The Regiment put up the Yellow Team and again split the series, winning the first game 5-4 and losing the second 6-2.

The Yellow Team has been greatly handicapped due to an injury incurred by their star back, Captain Henry R. Westphalinger, early in the season. However he is expected to return to the lineup shortly, and with the aid of his powerful strokes and field generalship, the Yellow Team expects to give the Academic Division a run for their money in the fall tournament.

The other members of the Yellow Team are Captain Rogers, Captain Frierson, and Captain Noble.

The Regiment has just completed the 1937 target season and qualified 98½% of the men required to fire with the rifle.

At present the Regiment is conditioning horses and men preparatory to participation in the Fourth Army Maneuvers which take place the latter part of August.

Recent additions in officer personnel are Captain Ward, Captain Cooley, and Captain Frierson. The first two were students in last year's regular class, and Captain Frierson came from detachment 10th Cavalry, U.S.M.A.

Major Frizzell, Captain Thayer, and Major Lambert have left for other stations.

### 3d Cavalry (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

COLONEL J. M. WAINWRIGHT, *Commanding*

THE last of May found the Regiment winding up its known distance range practice on the District of Columbia National Guard Range at Camp Simms. Troop "E" distinguished itself in the firing, not only in the number but in the excellence of qualifications.

On May 31st, Decoration Day, Fort Myer held its annual Memorial Day Horse Show for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. The show was the most successful yet held and broke all-time records, not only in attendance, but in gate receipts. Lt. Colonel John Millikin, 3d Cav., was Director of the Show and Major Arthur P. Thayer, 3d Cav., was Officer in Charge of Program and Ring. As usual, Major George H. Millholland, 3d Cavalry, handled all Publicity.

The high light of the show was 1st Lt. Frank S. Henry, 3d Cav., on his two beautiful jumping mares, *Clipped Wings* and *Brown Woods*. The former annexed the Jumper Championship and the latter the Hunter Championship in competition with the best of the local civilian and military horses.

The Regiment (less 1st Squadron) moved out of the Post on June 2d for an eight-day practice march and tactical inspection. The route lay through historical Northern Virginia with the first camp being made at Centerville. On the second day, the Regimental Commander was handed a secret tactical mission by the Brigade Plans and Training Officer, Major John K. Rice. The mission involved a reconnaissance by the Scout Cars and culminated in a

combined attack on an outlined enemy on the grand old terrain of the first battle of the Civil War, the historic Manassas Battlefield. The Brigade Commander, Brigadier General Chas. D. Roberts witnessed the problem and expressed himself as highly pleased with the tactical handling of the units and the high state of training of the Regiment as a whole.

Upon the vanquishment of the w.k. Reds, the Regiment continued its march to THE PLAINS, Va., where the second night camp was made. Very early the third morning found the 3d Cavalry on the road to Front Royal, Va. After passing through Marshall, the Plans and Training Officer, in a burst of misplaced confidence directed the Regimental Commander onto the wrong road. Upon being apprised of this fact a few minutes later, the Colonel said, "The h— with it," or words to that effect, "we'll keep on going until we find the right road." A few minutes later the first halt was made with the head of the column about 20 yards on the near side of a narrow but fairly deep ford. At this point the Regimental Commander turned to his P and T and (possibly as punishment for the road blunder) the following conversation took place:

Col. W.: "M—d, jump in the Motorcycle and reconnoiter a road for the Regiment. Get us back on the right road as soon as possible. Any questions? Move out!"

Maj. M.: "Yes, sir" (with alacrity, anxious to avoid the steely eye of the C. O. and at the same time make good his mistake).

To make a long story short, the P and T jumped into the Motorcycle sidecar, the driver was off in a flash, into the ford followed instantly by a sheet of water which completely engulfed the overzealous P and T and added nothing to his none-too-happy frame of mind. Up the mountain road, getting steeper and heavier with mud by the minute until finally the practically sea-going sidecar was beautifully bogged down. Four miles of this, the regiment coming along swimmingly on his heels and with the poor P and T virtually carrying motorcycle and driver on his broad but erring shoulders.

At last, the good old main road. It was sweet music to the miscreant's ears when the Colonel declared that he was delighted that the whole thing had happened for it showed some of the younger men in the regiment that Cavalry can travel at a high rate of speed over some of the present-day roads, many of which are still practically impassable to wheeled transportation in wet weather.

Camp the third night was at beautiful Front Royal, Va. Located high in the mountains of Virginia in a lovely spot, it is the home of one of our best Remount Depots and presided over by Colonel Warren W. Whitside, Q.M.C., who, with his staff, gave us a royal welcome and did everything possible to make us comfortable.

The fourth day's march led down the mountains some 32 miles to Warrenton. The day was hot and sultry and the march was not pleasant, but there was some compensation in knowing that the Regiment was to lay over Sunday in this grand, little, old town.

The next hop led back to Centerville where the first night had been spent and the last day's march took the Regiment to Fort Myer.

Altogether a total of over 150 miles had been covered in six marching days, which, although no record, was fair going considering the hot weather and the tactical problems en route.

The middle of June finds the 3d Cavalry starting its Summer Training Camps and since that date, there was one class of about 20 young Reserve Second Lieutenants of Cavalry who completed a course of two weeks' training under 1st Lieutenant John Ramsey Pugh, III. The Cavalry R.O.T.C. was present for a six-week course of instruction and the Cavalry C.M.T.C. for a month of training.

On completion of the C.M.T.C., the 2d Squadron and the Machine Gun Troop under Major George H. Millholland are slated to march to Fort Belvoir, Va., to establish and run the camp of instruction for 120 Cavalry Reserve Officers of the Second and Third Corps Areas.

New arrivals include Capt. Lawrence T. Smith, Supply Officer; Capt. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr., who has been assigned as Adjutant; Major A. W. Roffe, will relieve Major Arthur P. Thayer, who goes to the War College; and 1st Lt. C. M. Iseley who has been assigned to Troop "F."

\* \* \*

### 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry, Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

LIEUTENANT COLONEL THOMAS H. REES, JR.,  
*Commanding*

DURING June and July the summer training schedule has been in full swing. Record rifle practice occupied the latter half of May and was completed with Troop A under Captain C. C. Jadwin and Troop B under Captain R. M. Barton.

A copy of the report of the Regimental Commander, Colonel Jonathan M. Wainwright to the Adjutant General on the results of the former's inspection of the Squadron in May reached Squadron Headquarters early in June. As in his address to the Cavalry Officers here Colonel Wainwright cited the highly satisfactory condition of the Squadron and a decided excellence of the performance of field duties. He further recommended an increase in the technical personnel of Detachment Headquarters Troop. This addition has been made.

On June 8th the Squadron marched to the Artillery Range near Jericho and camped on the Lee River. The first week in the field was devoted to combat firing. Practice problems for squad and platoon were worked out and a final test problem under the supervision of the Squadron Commander was made with gratifying results.

On July 16th the 315th Cavalry (Reserve) of Massachusetts and Connecticut arrived under Lt. Colonel H. C. Thomas, Cav-Res., and accompanied by the unit instructors, Colonel R. E. Cummins, Major Harrison Herman, and Major H. H. Baird. For the next two weeks

the Squadron assisted the 315th through a full and strenuous training program which included mounted pistol, musketry, road marches, machine gun, and scout car marksmanship. The trainees found the two weeks very interesting and profitable and were enthusiastically appreciative of the efforts of regular personnel. On June 27th the 315th departed and on June 28th the Squadron broke camp and marched back to Ft. Ethan Allen.

By June 30th Lieutenants Wood, Brown, Dowd, Lord, and Barrows, Reserve Officers on duty with the Squadron under the Thomason Act had left. It was with a sense of loss that the Squadron viewed their going. All of them had made an excellent showing during the past year. Four new Reserve Officers, Lieutenants Couhig, Nogelo Avery, and Clark of Massachusetts State College joined the Squadron the 15th of July.

Plans and arrangements for the annual Ft. Ethan Allen Horse Show occupied the first part of July. The Show of 14 classes was presented Sunday, July 11th, before nearly 1,200 spectators. In every way it was a gratifying success and a fitting culmination to the Squadron's popular Gymkhana season of last winter. A detailed account of the show appears elsewhere in this issue.

During preparation for the show 20 remounts arrived from Front Royal. The shipment arrived in excellent condition and all those who have inspected the remounts declare them to be among the finest mounts to be found anywhere in the service. This added to the shipment of twenty received in May, makes an increase of 40 to the Squadron's animal strength. Captain T. C. Wenzlaff is in charge of remount training.

The enlisted strength of the Squadron keeps up with regular recruitment. On July 1st the Squadron had within 5 of the authorized strength.

Troop A, under Captain C. C. Jadwin, became parent troop for the C.M.T.C. Cavalry Troop that arrived in Ft. Ethan Allen Concurrent Camp July 8th. Captain Jadwin reports very favorably on the type of young men now being trained in the Cavalry C.M.T.C.

Before the march to the Artillery Range Captain T. C. Wenzlaff was relieved from Post Special Duty and was assigned to Troop B.

On June 21st Lt. and Mrs. Edwin M. Cahill left Ft. Ethan Allen on a two months' leave following which Lt. Cahill will report to the Cavalry School at Fort Riley. Arriving at this station after graduation from the Military Academy in 1933 Lt. Cahill was assigned to Troop A of the Squadron and served with that troop for all but a short time of the past four years.

2d Lt. Robert W. Fuller, III, Troop B was promoted to the grade of 1st Lieutenant on June 12th.

\* \* \*

### 4th Cavalry—Fort Meade, South Dakota

UNITS from the 4th Cavalry attending the Fourth Army Maneuvers are two motor transport companies, made up of drivers selected from all troops of the regiment; and the Scout Car platoon of Headquarters Troop.



The motor transport companies, commanded by Captain Walter F. Jennings and Captain Mitchell A. Giddens departed on July 16th for Fort Riley via Fort Crook, and will be gone until completion of the maneuvers. The Scout Car platoon, commanded by 2d Lieutenant Kelso G. Clow, left for Camp Ripley, Minnesota, on August 2d.

The 4th Cavalry Polo Team took part in, and won, the tournament at Fort Warren, Wyoming, during the last week in July, defeating the Fort Warren team in three games, and the Cheyenne team in one. Following was the 4th Cavalry line-up: Lieutenant Daniel E. Still, No. 1; Captain H. C. Hine, No. 2; Captain Wm. S. Biddle, No. 3; and Mr. Hanson, No. 4. Captain Biddle was injured in the final game, receiving a fractured rib. All games were fairly open, and both the 4th Cavalry players and the ponies did well.

The second annual Reserve Officers Contact Camp was held at this post on June 18, 19, and 20. About fifty reserve officers, from various parts of the middle west, attended. The program of activities included a field demonstration by the 4th Cavalry, consisting of an approach march and dismounted attack problem, and a problem in defense against aircraft.

The post baseball playing schedule was somewhat delayed and complicated due to rainy weather in early July; the departure of the Provisional Motor Transport Companies for maneuvers; and the shows which "E" Troop and "B" Troop were working on, to be given at Belle Fourche and Deadwood, respectively. However, a schedule was devised in which each team played each other team twice. The winner of the Post League was decided on a percentage basis. The standings of the post teams are as follows: 1st, Troop F; 2d, Troop E; 3d, Troop A; 4th, MG Tr.; 5th, Troop B; and 6th, HQ Troop.

The Regimental team was organized after the completion of the post tournament. Sergeant Hutcherson, Troop A, was appointed general manager, and Corporal Jones, Troop E, was appointed playing manager. At the date of writing the team has played five games, winning four and losing one. The team ends the season by participating in the state tournament August 31st to September 6th, at Aberdeen, South Dakota. They open the tournament with South Dakota State from Brookings. The outstanding player on the team, so far, is Private First Class Lawrence Preuss, Troop A, at shortstop.

The target season has been somewhat complicated by the necessity of having all men in units going to the 4th Army Maneuvers fire before leaving, but firing has been conducted continuously since the first of July with excellent weather and the season will be completed by the middle of August.

Six second lieutenants, Cavalry-Reserve, have reported to the post for one year's active duty under the Thomason Act: 2d Lieutenant Leo. F. Paul, Cav-Res., 308 N. Clinton, St., Iowa City, Iowa; 2d Lieutenant Perry E. Conant, Cav-Res., 404 E. Frank St., Caro, Michigan; 2d Lieutenant Charles E. Hermaneck, Cav-Res., 1312 Williams St., Omaha, Nebraska; 2d Lieutenant Walter L. Halv-

erson, Cav-Res., Grafton, North Dakota; 2d Lieutenant Carl W. Matschullat, Cav-Res., Page, Nebraska; 2d Lieutenant Melvin A. Hoherz, Cav-Res., Eagle Butte, South Dakota.

The post has welcomed several new officers, who arrived during the past month: Captain Martin A. Fennell, Cavalry; Captain Charles B. Chase, Cavalry; Captain H. C. Hine, Cavalry; Captain Louis B. Rapp, Cavalry; 1st Lieutenant Wm. W. Culp, Cavalry, and 1st Lieutenant Maurice E. Washburn, Dental Corps.

### 5th Cavalry—Fort Clark, Texas

COLONEL ROBERT C. RICHARDSON, JR., *Commanding*

THE 5th Cavalry is carrying on many varied activities these days.

As our share of the test of the "Proposed Infantry Division," we must furnish and train 140 men. One captain and three lieutenants will officer this force. Part of these will form part of a mechanized Reconnaissance Squadron, and the remainder will form a Truck Company. They will be on detached service for about three months.

The training of athletes for the 1st Cavalry Division Field Meet and Boxing Tournament has been organized on a large scale. A field meet and a swimming meet are held each month. The enthusiasm of competitors and spectators is tremendous. Boxing matches also draw large, enthusiastic crowds.

Many show horses are being developed this summer, within the troops. Monthly horse shows are held in which these horses compete. The development has been remarkable.

We are now training our third major group of the Civilian Components.

On July 4th and 5th, we played in Villa Acuña, Mexico, against General Quiñone's polo team. The scores were 12-3 and 10-4, Fort Clark winning both games. Our players were Col. Clifford, Captains Ireland and Raguse, and Lieutenants Del Campo, Teller, and Walsh.

### 6th Cavalry—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

COLONEL GEORGE DILLMAN, *Commanding*

THE 6th made its annual jaunt to Benning and there took part in the yearly scraps from small time Squadron affairs to big league Division stuff. Reconnaissance and screening and river lines to hold. The elasticity of a horse outfit was thoroughly tested when they stretched us over the long miles from Eelbeck to the Benning post. The great utility of the scout cars proved versatile savers of horse flesh and news gatherers par-excellence. Trucks always arrived with the chow and oats. Great team this: horse and motor. And the finale: A coordinated attack. A regiment of horse and a flock of tanks in one grand charge completed the activities.

A good march back from the wars. A pleasant welcome from the folks at home and then on with training. Pistol

firing. Summer camps. Rifle season coming up.

Polo begins to blossom (we start late at this post). We won a game from a newly organized but hard playing team from Fort McPherson, and twice we took into camp that strong Governor's Horse Guard from Atlanta. New players and new horses are in training and we look forward to more and better polo.

Our baseball field disports a new "turtle-back" diamond and is the frequent scene of battle between troop teams in which the regiment is keenly interested.

Horse Jumping Competitions are held bi-weekly with a view to developing riders and horses. Included are classes for newly enlisted soldiers and for green horses as well as for more experienced riders and horses. When our more formal horse shows are held in the fall we expect to have some good performances over interesting courses of sizeable obstacles.

We regret the departure of those officers and families listed below who have left us or are under orders to leave; and we welcome those who have newly joined or are under orders to join:

Departed or to depart:

Colonel Charles Burnett, May 13, 1937.

Colonel Clarence A. Dougherty, June 20, 1937.

Major William R. Hamby, May 6, 1937.

Lt. Col. Henry L. Flynn, October 20, 1937.

Lt. Col. John Kennard, Aug. 15, 1937.

Major Rufus S. Ramey, June 1, 1937.

Captain Walter Burnside, January 6, 1938.

Captain Ralph M. Neal, Aug. 20, 1937.

2d Lieut. Paul M. Jones, Aug. 1, 1937.

2d Lieut. Jeff F. Hollis, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. Roger Earl Towne, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. William Stinnie Huff, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. Robert Bradley Lincoln, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. Walter Ben McKenzie, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. George Edward Sapor, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. John Thomas McKnight, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. John James Flynt, Jr., June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. Howell Harris Prothro, June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. John Daniel Bowden, Jr., June 30, 1937.

2d Lieut. Robert Edwin Snelling, June 30, 1937.

Joined or under orders to join:

Major Hans E. Kloepper, Sept. 30, 1937.

Capt. Fred W. Koester, Aug. 21, 1937.

Capt. Edwin M. Burnett, Sept. 23, 1937.

Capt. Thomas T. Thornburgh, Aug. 25, 1937.

Capt. Hugh F. T. Hoffman, July 26, 1937.

Captain William P. Withers, June 12, 1937.

2d Lieut. Andrew J. Lynch, on termination academic leave.

2d Lieut. Elwin Thomas Knight, July 6, 1937.

2d Lieut. John Hadley Todd, July 18, 1937.

2d Lieut. James Owens Hadley, July 19, 1937.

2d Lieut. John White Yow, July 4, 1937.

2d Lieut. Thomas Hearn Verdel, July 18, 1937.

2d Lieut. Servetus Perkins Crockett, July 7, 1937.

2d Lieut. James Ashburn Seay, July 6, 1937.

2d Lieut. George Long McElmurray, July 5, 1937.

2d Lieut. William Andrew Wilkins, July 7, 1937.

2d Lieut. Arthur Middleton Williams, Jr., July 6, 1937.

1 1 1

### 7th Cavalry—Fort Bliss, Texas

COLONEL JOHN K. HERR, *Commanding*

ORGANIZATION DAY was celebrated on June 25th at Scott Able Canyon, N. M., while the regiment was on the annual practice march. Special refreshments were trucked out for the occasion and after a short and appropriate ceremony, everyone pitched into an enjoyable feast. The spirit of the day was helped along by the band which came out for the party, and, although the strains of Garry Owen at the close were played in a quick-gathering mountain storm, the celebration was voted an entire success.

The march itself, through the Sacramento Mountains, was both interesting and instructive. While the scenery was beautiful, the climate delightful and layovers frequent enough to add to the enjoyment of the trip, the lessons learned in mountain marching and tactics together with the use of scout cars and trucks in extremely hilly and difficult country were most opportune to an outfit which gets most of its training on the flat country adjacent to Fort Bliss. The march was brought to a close by a forced night march of sixty miles and the conclusion of the same showed both men and animals in excellent shape.

During the march the regimental baseball team played games with Cloudcroft and the Mescalero Indians, winning both games. Although the practice of the team has been seriously curtailed by target practice and the annual practice march, it is thought that a lot of improvement has been shown and the team should give a good account of itself in the post league games which began in July.

The regiment conducted its annual target practice at Dona Ana Target Range from May 10th to May 30th. Although many recently assigned recruits fired along with their troops, the regiment made a good showing. Firing with cal. .30 and cal. .50 machine guns was also done at this time with excellent results.

Lt. Lardin became the proud father of a boy on June 15th. With the help of radio and automobile he was able to rush in from the march and see his son soon after he was born.

At an informal horse show held on the hunt course on May 22d, *Navigator*, Captain Howze up, placed second in the Hunter Class. Lt. Murdoch on *Little Pal*, came a cropper over an in-and-out and not only lost the class, but most of the skin from his face and hands.

The regiment began the supervision of the training of the R.O.T.C. unit from New Mexico Military Institute on June 3d. This encampment lasts six weeks and is followed by the training of the C.M.T.C. for one month, which is also allotted to the 7th this year.

We were sorry to see the departure during June of the six Thomason Act Reserve Officers, whom we have had assigned to us for the last year. Although they will be replaced by others on July 1st, we had grown to like these

young officers very much and hope that any active service they may have in the future may be with us.

### 8th Cavalry—Fort Bliss, Texas

COLONEL INNIS P. SWIFT, *Commanding*

A REGIMENTAL field meet was held on May 25-26, 1937. Class I was a Grannis Course race for remounts received since the first of the year. Lieutenant Martz copped this event in excellent time with Lieutenant Alger, Captain Valentine, and Lieutenant Snee finishing second, third, and fourth.

Class II was an Enlisted Men's Military Team event. Each troop in the regiment entered a team of three mounted men. The troopers in prescribed order ran 100 yards to the picket line, saddled and bridled, took a course of five 3' 6" jumps, fired mounted at a series of balloons with revolver blanks, dismounted, loaded their rifles, and fired five blanks from a kneeling position at a simulated target. Troop "A" won this event closely pressed by Machine Gun and "B" Troops.

Class III was a polo ball race twice the length of the polo field. The balls were painted different colors for each contestant. Lieutenant Palmer won this event with Lieutenants Cherry and Haines placing and showing.

Class IV was a polo bending race over a course consisting of 6 poles spread 12 feet apart. Only remounts received since the first of the year were eligible. Lieutenant Palmer also won this event on his grand little roan gelding, *Jeep*. Lieutenant Janzan, Captain Valentine, and Lieutenant Snee finished second, third, and fourth.

Class V was the officers modified pentathlon consisting of four phases; shooting, swimming, riding, and running. Lieutenants Alger, Polk, Jones, and Cole finished in the money, in that order.

Lieutenant Palmer won an additional trophy presented by Colonel Swift and Lieutenant Colonel Aleshire for best composite score in all events by reason of his two firsts.

### 9th Cavalry—Fort Riley, Kansas

COLONEL CUTHBERT P. STEARNS, *Commanding*

DURING May and the first part of June the Regiment was very busy assisting in the Cavalry School annual maneuvers, horse shows, night rides, race meets, and graduation activities. After graduation the regiment began training in rifle marksmanship. With 100 or more recruits entering into their first season of instruction in rifle marksmanship, anticipations run high for a higher per cent in qualifications this year. As an incentive prizes are being awarded as follows:

To the man having the highest individual record score in each group \$5.00.

To the man firing the highest individual score, firing course B for the first time \$5.00.

For each possible score at each range \$2.00.

To each coach whose men have the highest score \$5.00 each group.

To the coach whose men have the highest average score for all four groups: First prize, \$15.00; second prize, \$10.00; third prize, \$5.00.

To the coach getting the highest individual score of men who have never fired course B \$5.00.

To the coach who qualifies the greatest number of men who have never qualified \$5.00.

The first group having completed record firing, the results are published:

Individual high score—Sergeant Joe Sharp, Troop A, score 233. Making highest score for first-time firing course B, Private John W. Campbell, Jr., score 216.

Men making possible record scores:

Corporal Tommy Anderson, Troop E, one.

Private William P. Hurd, Troop E, one.

Corporal William F. Tillman, Troop B, one.

Pvt. 1cl. Sam Reid, Troop E, one.

Coach whose squad made the highest average score in the first group was Sergeant Joe Sharp, Troop A, squad total 883.

In addition to the busy business of a target season the regiment is serving as parent organization to the Citizens' Military Training Camp, with Major Joseph M. Tully, 9th Cavalry, as Camp Executive and 17 enlisted men forming headquarters and training personnel. This camp is held each summer under the auspices of the War Department. The various courses of instruction at this camp have among their objectives the physical, moral, and mental developments of the American youth. It is believed that this C.M.T. Camp is the only colored one in the United States. It is made up of boys from Arkansas, Iowa, Illinois, Missouri, Nebraska, and Kansas. The morale registers 99.9.

In sports, the regiment has three squadron baseball teams entered in the Post League. All teams are making a creditable showing.

The Regimental Baseball team recently journeyed to Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, to meet an old rival, the 10th Cavalry, playing two games of the annual four-game series winning one and losing one. The last two games will be played at Fort Riley, during the Regimental Day Celebration July 28th.

First Lieutenant Jack W. Turner, 2d Cavalry, attached to the regiment with Warrant Officer John Clarke, and thirty-eight men of the 9th Cavalry Band went to Dallas, Texas, June 19th for a four-day musical engagement at the Pan-American Exposition. For their splendid performance there the band was awarded the title of "EMBAJADOR EXTRAORDINARIO" and conferred the degree of "ENVIADOS DE LA MUSICA" by the Pan-American Exposition.

### 10th Cavalry (less 2d Squadron and MG Troop) Fort Leavenworth, Kansas

LIEUT. COLONEL N. BUTLER BRISCOE, *Commanding*

DURING May and June, the regiment was busy carrying out its duties in connection with the Fort Leaven-



worth Spring Horse Show and Race Meet and with construction and operation of the Officers' Summer Camp of the Command and General Staff School.

The month of July was utilized for target practice. A more ambitious program than had been attempted for some years past was undertaken, with very satisfactory results.

A horse show team representing the Fort Leavenworth Hunt and composed of Captains Comfort, Hains, and Willey of this regiment, after a very successful season over the local army circuit of Fort Sill, Fort Riley, and Fort Leavenworth, was sent to Chicago. There they competed at the Chicago Jubilee Horse Show and the Lake Forest Horse Show, and carried off their full share of the honors.

The regimental baseball teams, both hard and soft ball, have also had a most successful season, under direction of Captain John P. Willey, Athletic Officer. The Soft Ball Team won the Fort Leavenworth Post soft ball trophy and the hard ball team won the four-game series against our old rival, the Ninth Cavalry, by three games to one. The annual series of baseball and football games between these two regiments are important events in the lives of the men. Competition is always very keen but entirely on a plane of good natured rivalry.

Organization Day, July 28th, was celebrated by a short program in the morning, at which short addresses were made by the Commandant and the Regimental Commander, the history of the Regiment read and the Shipp Memorial Trophy presented. The Shipp Trophy is a memorial to Lieut. W. E. Shipp who was killed in action at Santiago and Captain Fabius B. Shipp who was killed at polo at Fort Huachuca while on duty with this regiment. It was presented by Mrs. W. E. Shipp and her surviving son Lt. Col. W. E. Shipp, and is awarded to the enlisted man in his first enlistment who has, during the past year, been adjudged outstanding in military duties, athletic sports, and general all around value to the regiment. This year it was awarded to Private First Class Lee D. Thomas, Troop A.

The following letter from one of the original members of the 10th Cavalry may be of interest to the Cavalry at large:

1525 South 11th St.,  
Springfield, Ill.,  
Nov. 17, 1936.

Sergt. Major, 10th U. S. Cav.,  
West Point, N. Y.

DEAR SIR:

I feel that my first duty should be an apology for intruding on your valuable time on a subject for which you possibly have little or no interest.

I have been wondering if I am the last man or are there any survivors of the 10th Cavalry who were in at its organization. I enlisted Sept. 10, 1867. Discharged Sept. 11, 1877. I entered the regiment at the age of 19 as trumpeter, severed seven years as First Sergeant of L Troop, and was discharged as R.Q.M. Sergt. in 1878 through the recommendation of Colonel B. H. Grierson, our com-

mander, I received an appointment as Supt. National Cemeteries and served in that position for fifty-three years retiring in August, 1930.

At the outbreak of the Spanish-American War I was stationed at the National Cemetery at Fort Scott, Kansas.

Through the recommendation of Colonel Grierson was commissioned Major of the 23d Kansas Volunteers and served with my regiment in Cuba having obtained leave of absence from my cemeterial duties.

I just imagined you might have knowledge of an older survivor.

I must in closing ask you to kindly overlook any defects in this letter. You know a man 89 years old is not expected to be a good penman.

Sincerely yours,

GEO. W. FORD.

### 11th Cavalry—Presidio of Monterey, California

COLONEL TROUP MILLER, *Commanding*

THE 11th Cavalry left its home station, the Presidio of Monterey on May 21, and marched to San Francisco to participate in ceremonies in connection with the opening of the Golden Gate Bridge, "The Span of Gold." The part played by the Regiment, in the celebration, evoked much favorable comment including the letter quoted below which was received by the Regimental Commander on the return of the Regiment to the Presidio of Monterey on June 6th:

"HEADQUARTERS NINTH CORPS AREA  
Presidio of San Francisco, California.

June 7, 1937.

SUBJECT: Participation in the Golden Gate Bridge  
Fiesta.

TO: Commanding Officer, 11th Cavalry,  
Presidio of Monterey, California.

1. The participation of the 11th Cavalry was one of the great attractions in the Golden Gate Bridge Fiesta and was a large factor in its success.

The coöperation of the officers of your Headquarters with those of my staff and of the post of the Presidio was most helpful.

The superior appearance of the regiment as a military unit attracted much favorable comment from both military and civilian observers. This, in connection with my recent observation of the regiment in the field, convinces me of the high state of training and morale existing throughout your command. It is naturally a source of pride to me as the Corps Area Commander.

2. I request that my sincere appreciation be transmitted, through you, to the officers and enlisted men who participated in the Fiesta.

(S) Geo. S. Simonds,

(T) GEO. S. SIMONDS,  
Major General, U. S. Army,  
Commanding."

Major General Leon B. Kromer, joined the regiment on its return march and spent two days riding with the

command. General Kromer also found time, while on the march, to make a hurried visit to the Presidio of Monterey where he assembled the officers who were not on the march and in an interesting informal address outlined to them the operations of the office of the Chief of Cavalry.

The regiment and its Commander, Colonel Troup Miller, were greeted on their return to the post, on June 6th, by local civic organizations, headed by a reception committee, which stopped the regiment on its route of march, when just within the city of Monterey, and extended a welcome with a brief, pleasing ceremony.

Summer Camp Training was initiated, at the Presidio of Monterey, on June 10th, with the arrival of the first unit, the Artillery ROTC Students. The camps reached the peak on July 11th at which time personnel as follows were undergoing training at this station:

- 1,200 CMTC Trainees,
- 600 Members of the Officers' Reserve Corps,
- 200 ROTC Students.

On August 1st, one day after the completion of Summer Camps, the Regiment left the post and marched to San Luis Obispo to participate in Fourth Army Maneuvers. It will return to its home station, the Presidio of Monterey on August 18th.

Independence Day, July 4th, was appropriately celebrated by the Regiment. The 11th Cavalry, the 2d Bn., 76th Field Artillery, Naval Units from the cruisers, *Trenton* and *Richmond*, and local civic organizations paraded through the historic streets of Monterey. Rear Admiral J. C. Townsend, Colonel Troup Miller, 11th Cavalry, ranking naval officers of the cruisers *Trenton* and *Richmond*, and civil dignitaries were in the reviewing stand as distinguished guests of the City of Monterey. The cruisers visiting in Monterey were a part of the 4th Light Cruiser Division, commanded by Rear Admiral J. C. Townsend from the flagship *Trenton*. The *Trenton* was commanded by Commander Braisted, the *Richmond* by Commander Kelly.

The officers and men of the cruisers *Trenton* and *Richmond* were entertained by the garrison during their stay in the harbor. Colonel and Mrs. Troup Miller entertained officers of the cruisers and their wives at dinner on the night of July 3d while the Presidio Officers' Club gave a reception and dance following the dinner to the visiting naval officers. The Noncommissioned Officers' Club provided entertainment for the sailors in the form of a reception and dance while troops entertained them at dinner and provided mounts for an afternoon's recreation on the trails through the Del Monte Forest. The post baseball team played the team from each of the cruisers during their visit, emerging victorious in both games. A gymkhana staged by the Regiment, on the Municipal Beach of Monterey as a part of the Independence Day Program of the city, provided entertainment for the personnel of the visiting cruisers as well as spectators from the surrounding communities.

The officers and men of the Regiment were gratified to

learn that the 11th Cavalry Team has won the Regimental Rifle Team Match, fired at La Carne, Ohio, on June 28, 1937, with a total score of 1,123, and that Sergeant Foster, MG Troop, 11th Cavalry, had placed first in the shoot over all competitors with a score of 286.

Warner Brothers, Incorporated, spent three weeks, during the month of July, filming the motion picture "Sergeant Murphy" at the Presidio of Monterey. The picture is expected to be released in the fall. Troops of the Presidio of Monterey appear in the film engaged in normal activities. The experience of coöperating with the producers, in the filming of the motion picture, was interesting and instructive to the personnel of the garrison.

Changes in commissioned personnel assigned to and joining the Regiment since the last issue of *The Cavalry Journal* are as follows:

Lt. Colonel Edward J. Dwan joined the Regiment from duty in the Philippine Department. Captain Joseph M. Glasgow reported from Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont. Captain Frank J. Thompson joined from duty with the 26th Cavalry in the Philippines. Captain Lyman L. Judge joined from duty with the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas. Orders have also been received assigning 1st Lt. Charles W. Allan from the 26th Cavalry, Philippine Islands.

Four Second Lieutenants, Cavalry Reserve, have joined the 11th Cavalry for one year's active duty under the Thomason Act. The officers assigned are:

- 2d Lieut. Edward C. Heuss, Cav-Res.
- 2d Lieut. Joseph Kaserman, Cav-Res.
- 2d Lieut. Samuel A. Martin, Jr., Cav-Res.
- 2d Lieut. Dan S. Nelson, Cav-Res.

Losses during the period were:

Captain Donald H. Nelson to the Philippine Department. Captain James H. Walker to the Command and General Staff School, Fort Leavenworth. Captain Edwin P. Crandell to the Special Advanced Equitation School at Fort Riley. 1st Lts. Robert H. Bayne and Charles E. Leydecker to the Troop Officers' Course at Fort Riley. Captain Paul G. Kendall to the Staff and Faculty of the Cavalry School.

### 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry—Fort Ringgold, Texas

LIEUTENANT COLONEL JOHN A. CONSIDINE,  
Commanding

THE Garden Spot of the Lower Valley has been the scene of an ear buzzing turnover during the past three weeks. First, we were to lose our Commanding Officer, Lt. Colonel John A. Considine, to the Staff School at Leavenworth as an instructor. A few short days thereafter saw the departure of Major George P. Cummings for R.O.T.C. duty at Riverside, California. Yet another three days and Lt. Dooley and Lt. Eberle, Cavalry Reserves, departed.

These losses were matched by the addition of Capt. F. W. Drury from Fort Riley, who was heartily welcomed by all. The new Commanding Officer is not ex-

pected until August 24th, Major Herbert L. Jackson acting in that capacity.

A very interesting series of demonstrations illustrating the value of the .22 caliber machine guns and rifles in combat exercises were presented and the results obtained were unusually good.

Preparations for the Division Horse Show proceeds apace under the able direction of Major Rogers. The training program calls for a series of horse shows, one or two of which will be held in the neighboring Valley.

### 13th Cavalry (Mechanized)—Fort Knox, Ky.

COLONEL CHARLES L. SCOTT, *Commanding*

ON MONDAY, June 14, Major General Leon B. Kromer visited Fort Knox and inspected the 13th Cavalry along with the other units on the Post.

During the past month the Regiment has been concentrating on its known distance range firing. At the present writing six of the eight troops have completed this work and the other two will finish in about one week. Considering the fact that over five hundred men now in the regiment have joined since last October 1st the records made have been exceptionally fine. Each troop will start its combat firing as soon as it finishes with its known distance range work.

Delivery of vehicles to the regiment is way behind schedule. This seriously handicaps all progressive training in troops and in squadrons as well as regiment work.

Captain James V. Gagne joined the regiment on June 16 and has been assigned as Motor Officer of the Regiment. Captain Redding F. Perry joined on June 1st and relieved First Lieutenant Paul A. Disney who departed on two months' leave of absence prior to reporting to the Cavalry School as a student in the Special Advanced Equitation Course. Major Mordaunt V. Turner reported for duty on July 1st but was called home immediately thereafter because of the serious illness of his father.

The Regimental Baseball League finished its schedule on July 1st with Troops B and Machine Gun tied for first place. They then played a three-game series to decide the regimental championship and also the team to meet the other unit champions on the Post for the mythical Post Championship. Troop B won this series by winning the first two games by scores of 9 to 8 and 3 to 2.

### 1st Squadron 14th Cavalry—Fort Sheridan, Ill.

LIEUT. COLONEL WILFRID M. BLUNT, *Commanding*

DURING the months of June and July the squadron completed part of its marksmanship instruction and assisted in the operation of the summer training camps at Fort Sheridan.

From June 9th to 15th the squadron assisted in the Chicago Jubilee Horse Show in which it presented a number of military exhibitions as a part of the program. These exhibitions proved so popular that they were also presented at the Lake Forest Horse Show the following week.

Since the middle of July the squadron has been busy

training recruits and remounts in preparation for the 6th Corps Area Maneuvers and the annual Tactical Inspection to be held at Camp McCoy, Wisconsin.

A horse show team from the squadron coached by Major Paul H. Morris competed very successfully in the Chicago Jubilee Horse Show, the Lake Forest Horse Show, the Hindsale Horse Show, and in the Oconomowoc Horse Show near Milwaukee.

In July Captain Clyde A. Burcham won the Kromer Pistol Trophy Match (Individual Cavalry Pistol Championship) at Camp Perry, Ohio.

Lieutenants Jules V. Richardson and Harold L. Richy have been relieved in order to attend the Regular Officers' Class at the Cavalry School and the following Reserve Officers have been assigned to the squadron for a year's training under the Thomason Act: 2d Lieutenants Leland W. Cramer, Henry W. Dalton, Charles A. Newlin, Theodore A. Twelmeyer, James M. Sturman.

On July 6th Lieutenant Colonel Wilfrid M. Blunt assumed command of the squadron, relieving Lieutenant Colonel Paul R. Davison, who left for the Command and General Staff School, Fort Leavenworth, on July 28, 1937.

### 115th Cavalry, Wyoming National Guard Field Training Period

By 1st Lieut. Mills Astin, 115th Cavalry, WNG

THE 115th Cavalry, Wyoming National Guard, commanded by Colonel R. L. Esmay, Adjutant General of Wyoming, on June 26th terminated its annual field training period after two weeks on the Pole Mountain Maneuver Area west of Fort Francis E. Warren, Wyoming.

As an accommodation to men attending school and in order to avoid interference with their summer employment, the camp was held about a month earlier than in previous years. An immediate result was that it was neces-



Part of the 115th Cavalry going out for a problem

sary to install Sibley stoves in the squad tents, the elevation being about 8,400 feet. The two or three cold, foggy days in no way interfered with the training schedule.

Troops detrained at Laramie, Wyoming. Men who



were not mounted, due to the shortage of horses, were sent ahead of the column in motor convoy to complete the camp which had been started earlier by the State Quartermaster Detachment.

A day was gained by issuing rent animals on Sunday, June 13th, rather than on Monday as planned. Under the supervision of Major John O. Lawrence, Senior Instructor, and regimental officers, each rent animal had been "topped off" by cowboys from the ranches from which the animals were rented. Following a general observation each horse was numbered and notes were taken of his manners. These notes guided troop officers in assigning the mounts. The precaution was well taken as there were no serious accidents when the half the regiment mounted strange, untrained, range horses.

Two days were devoted to mechanical training before combat training of all units, including the squadrons, was begun. *More than 100 problems* were given during the combat work with offense and defense against mechanization and aircraft being featured. The principal field exercise followed individual squadron overnight hikes and bivouacs. In this problem the 3d Squadron, commanded by Major E. E. Murane, was given the task of occupying successive delaying positions opposed by the 1st Squadron, commanded by Major J. L. Jordan, and the 2d Squadron, commanded by Major R. S. Grier, in an advance action. About 500 men and 55 officers took part in the maneuver.

An interesting feature was permitted by Colonel Esmay who released the regimental reserve period in order that squadrons might be combined as war strength troops. All troop officers were given an opportunity to handle the large elements.

The largest number of civilians ever to visit the regiment in the field was present at the mounted review June 20th. Brigadier General W. R. Taylor took the honors. Governor Leslie A. Miller of Wyoming was the honored guest at the camp horse show June 24th. Before reviewing the regiment at retreat the same evening Governor Miller presented state service medals to 35 men and officers. It has been the governor's custom to personally present these awards at each camp. Each night there were a number of guests to witness the formal guard mount and dismounted retreat parade.

Success of the open air movies each night of camp last year prompted the regiment to purchase its own sound and projection equipment for use this year. The radio section of Headquarters Troop arranged a hook-up so that the Louis-Braddock fight could be broadcast during the picture show. Very good use was made of War Department training films at officers' and noncommissioned officers' schools. Many of the troops will equip themselves with 16 mm projectors this winter in order that War Department films may be used during the armory training period.

Due to the work of the Adjutant General's office and officers of the regiment the legislature of the State of Wyoming at the last session authorized state pay of one dollar a day for camp to all enlisted men of the regiment.

At the conclusion of camp men and officers unanimously joined the Wyoming National Guard Association the purpose of which will be the furtherance of the interests of the Wyoming regiment.

After two years with the Wyoming National Guard Major Lawrence has been ordered to Leavenworth. He will be succeeded by Major Edwin C. Godbold, who, with Captain Charles W. Fake, Junior Instructor, was present through camp. Camp inspectors were Captains James H. Walker and Paul G. Kendall, 11th Cavalry, Monterey. Camp was also visited by Colonel John T. Geary, IXth Corps Area National Guard Officer, and Lieut. Col. Carl A. Waldman, ordnance inspector.

In saying farewell to the regiment Major Lawrence mentioned his gratification with the fact that all officers are members of the Cavalry Association.

When the overcoated troops led off the picket line on that drizzling cold morning of June 24th, breaking camp, everyone testified to the pleasantness and success of the field training period.

### 54th Cavalry Brigade

BRIGADIER GENERAL NEWELL C. BOLTON, *Commanding*

THE 54th Cavalry Brigade, commanded by Brigadier General Newell C. Bolton, Cleveland, Ohio, and consisting of the 107th Cavalry, Ohio National Guard, commanded by Col. Woods King, and the 123d Cavalry, Kentucky National Guard, Colonel Henry J. Stites, commanding, arrived at Fort Knox, Kentucky, July 18th, for two weeks of active duty training. The cavalry brigade is in camp in the tent area north of the 13th Cavalry.

On Monday morning at 9 o'clock General Bolton and staff called on Brigadier General Daniel Van Voorhis, commanding Fort Knox, at Post Headquarters. Upon arrival at Post Headquarters General Bolton was accorded prescribed honors. A guard of honor, consisting of Troop E, 1st Cavalry, Combat Cars, and commanded by Captain Wendell Blanchard, was posted outside of Headquarters to meet him. A gun salute was fired by Battery A, 68th Field Artillery, commanded by Captain Edward H. Metzger. General Bolton availed himself of the opportunity to inspect the troop, battery, and band, and commented very favorably upon the appearance of the men and equipment. While General Bolton was conferring with General Van Voorhis in the latter's office, the 1st Cavalry Band played appropriate music.

Upon leaving Post Headquarters, General Bolton was escorted to the 54th Cavalry Brigade Headquarters by the escort of honor.

On Monday the brigade took up the military duties incident to training, beginning with pistol and rifle firing, and instruction in the school of the soldier and squad mounted. Next week the brigade will take a three-day march south of the Post.

Colonel R. D. Newman, of the Training Section of the Office of the Chief of the National Guard Bureau, Washington, D. C., spent several days at Fort Knox observing

the training of the 54th Cavalry Brigade.

Colonel Newman had just completed a tour of inspection of National Guard units and arrived at Fort Knox from Mineral Wells, Texas, where he had inspected the 56th Cavalry Brigade of the Texas National Guard.

### 305th Cavalry—Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

COLONEL VINCENT A. CARROLL, Cavalry-Reserve,  
*Commanding*

THE REGIMENT successfully put on its second annual Equestrian Games on the estate of Major Alfred Biddle. Many civilian hunters were entered in the six classes.

It was a perfect day, with clear sky, a colorful crowd, and many perfect performances.

The type of show which is so well suited to hunters and jumpers proved very popular.

Many of the officers of the 305th competed, riding their own horses or borrowed ones. Captain Ed. Town won a red ribbon in the "Green Hunter" class. This officer rode in practically every class on a variety of strange animals. He wasn't surprised to be tossed twice, coming back each time for more.

A team made up of Lts. Howley, Watson, and Gentle, won a red in the team competition open to military and fox-hunting teams. They did a splendid job riding with perfect team work three of Major Biddle's horses. They narrowly missed the Blue, which went to Major Younger's great Quartermaster Corps team. Major Younger had a winning day on *Brian Born*. This animal was without doubt the champion of the show. That he, next week, won a blue at the Atlantic City Show, was as expected.

Well groomed horses, pulling everything from milk wagons to dump trucks, paraded down Philadelphia's great Parkway. At their head rode Grand Marshal, Colonel Vincent A. Carroll, commander of the 305th. Accompanying him rode his aide, Lt. James Mitchell. In back of them came an all 305th color guard of Lts. Watson, Gentle, Naftzinger, and Howley. In Mayor Wilson's reviewing stand stood the three judges, Colonel A. H. Wilson, the 305th Unit Instructor, Colonel Chas. A. Romeyn, and Mr. Scott.

The 305th did its part in this phase of Philadelphia's Constitution year. Those officers who participated had a thoroughly good time, starting with Colonel Carroll's luncheon at the Art Club and ending with judging some truly magnificent Clydesdales, Percherons, and other draft horses.

Wednesday night riding in Fairmount Park has been discontinued for the summer, but noon-day conferences continue. Special training is being given to selected officers to fit them for C.M.T.C. duty at Fort Myer, July 5-July 18.

Another 16 officers will attend two weeks' unit training at Fort Belvoir, starting August 15.

The 305th officers on duty at Fort Myer C.M.T. Camp will probably be headed by our newest Major, John

"Doug" Grannis, formerly of Scotland's famous Black Watch.

The two subjects of general conversation these days are based upon our new Chief of Staff, Colonel Osmun Latrobe, and Colonel Wilson's two West Point sons. The Chief of Staff has won all officers by a single visit. A grand soldier and gentleman is he, with many practical yet fascinating experiences.

As for Colonel Wilson, the officers are delighted that his graduating son, A. Harry Wilson, Jr., won the coveted Horsemanship Award; while his younger son, now in his final year, played beside him on West Point's Intercollegiate Polo Champions.

### 306th Cavalry—Baltimore, Maryland, and Washington, D. C.

COLONEL J. B. P. CLAYTON HILL, Cavalry-Reserve,  
*Commanding*

WASHINGTON

CONFERENCES during May were as follows:

*May 6:* Lecture: "Development of Reconnaissance by Horse and Mechanized Cavalry Operating in Conjunction With and Against Each Other," delivered by Lieut. Col. John Millikin, 3d Cavalry. Conference: "Practical Work With Machine Guns," by Captain E. H. Daniel, 306th Cavalry. Conference: "Machine Gun Troop in Deployed Defense," by 1st Lieut J. B. Goodell, 306th Cavalry.

*May 20:* Conference (Field Officers): "Cavalry Regiment and Squadron in the Attack," by Major H. H. Jacobs, 306th Cavalry. Conference (Troop Officers): "Cavalry Troop in Attack," by Captain R. S. Cochran, 306th Cavalry. Conference: "Cavalry Regiment in Deploying Action," by Major J. C. Mullenix, Cavalry.

On May 13th the officers assembled in "fatigue clothes" at 9:00 AM, at Fort Myer and were issued shovels, saws, axes, and other necessary implements. Thereupon, under the able tactical direction of the Second Squadron Commander, Major E. B. Harry, they proceeded to the southwestern end of Fort Myer and constructed an excellent course of training jumps. Since then the equitation classes have been utilizing them to the fullest extent.

The conferences and rides during June were notably instructive and pleasant. On June 3d the combined groups of field and troop officers listened to Captain W. W. Woodruff, 306th Cavalry, on the subject: "Minor Decisions." During the next hour Captain Guerra Everett presented to the field officers a conference on "A Cavalry Squadron in the Advance Guard," while 1st Lieut. L. F. Hess, 306th Cavalry, presented a problem on "A Cavalry Platoon on Advanced Guard Duty," to the troop officers.

On June 17th Colonel J. M. Wainwright, 3d Cavalry, addressed a large group on the subject "Cavalry Marches." The Squadron was extremely fortunate in having the opportunity to hear this important subject discussed by such an able and experienced speaker.

The last ride of the season was held on June 20th. 1st Lieut. Edward M. Perkins was detailed to the Civilian Conservation Corps duty upon his return from Fort Riley, in June.

#### BALTIMORE

The Regiment led the 62d Cavalry Division in the number of officers attending conferences in April and May. The May 11th meeting of the Baltimore officers was held at Colonel Hill's residence. Major Wallace C. Warner, 306th Cavalry, assisted by Captain Samuel Glazier, 306th Cavalry, presented the lecture on "Combat Principles, Defense." The second conference of May was held on May 24th, Major Geary F. Eppley, 306th Cavalry, and 1st Lieut. Kenneth S. White, 306th Cavalry, covering the subject "Combat Principles, Delaying Action." Both conferences were held under the supervision of Lt. Col. Wm. H. Skinner, the Regimental Executive Officer.

Colonel Hill entered the Marine Hospital, Baltimore, on May 24th, with minor injuries resulting from his Fort Myer ride of the preceding Sunday morning. He is expected to leave the hospital in time to join the American Battle Monuments Commission, of which he is a member, in dedicating American monuments in Europe this summer. Lt. Col. Skinner will command the Regiment at summer camp.

A Garden Party was given to Colonel and Mrs. John D. Long by the 306th Cavalry Mess on May 21st, just before Colonel Long departed for his new post in Panama. Those present included Mrs. Harry W. Nice, wife of the Governor of Maryland, Governor Nice being unable to attend because of illness; the new Chief of Staff, 62d Cavalry Division, Colonel Osmun Latrobe, and Mrs. Latrobe; Lt. Col. H. McE. Pendleton, Cavalry, and Mrs. Pendleton; Lt. Col. Wm. H. Skinner, 306th Cavalry; Colonel D. John Markey, M.N.G.; Lt. Col. H. C. Ruhl, M.N.G., and Mrs. Ruhl; and a number of other officers and guests.

2d Lieutenants Robert D. Wilson, Troop "K," and Edward A. Cockey, III, Troop "A," were ordered to active duty with the Civilian Conservation Corps in May, while 1st Lieut. Samuel E. McCrary, Troop "B," was transferred to the 305th Cavalry, Philadelphia, Pa., he having moved to that city. The Regiment regrets the loss of an excellent officer, and congratulates the 305th Cavalry.

The June 14th conference was conducted by Lt. Col. Wm. H. Skinner, the subject being "Night Marches." 1st Lieut. Graham Dukehart, 306th Cavalry, who has just returned from The Cavalry School, described the Night March put on at Riley for the Reserve Officers' Class this year. Lieut. Dukehart has just been reassigned to Headquarters, 1st Squadron, as the S-1, Adjutant. In June, 2d Lieutenants James H. Nelson, David E. Betts, Leonard P. Roberts, and 1st Lieut. Ernest T. Upson, Med-Res., were relieved from assignment to the Regiment, while Captain James D. Harper, Med-Res., reported as

Regimental Surgeon, and also Pvt. Lowell J. Bradford, Cav-Enl. Res. (to Troop "E").

Equitation classes at Fort Hoyle were discontinued for the summer on Sunday, June 13th. A number of Baltimore officers, led by Lt. Col. Skinner, went to Washington on the following Sunday for a final ride of the season with the 2d Squadron at Fort Myer. Dinner arrangements were made by Major Edward B. Harry, 306th Cavalry, and a very pleasant time was had by all.

The final conference of the 1936-37 season was held on June 28th when Major Wallace C. Warner, 306th Cavalry, presented the subject: "Defense of a River Line." The improved attendance record of the past month or two presages an active "inactive season" in the coming fall.

\* \* \*

#### 307th Cavalry (less 3d Squadron and Machine Gun Troop)—Richmond, Virginia

COLONEL MATTHEW M. JAMES, Cavalry-Reserve,

##### *Commanding*

1st Lt. Walter R. Tayloe has just finished his second course at his own expense at the Cavalry School, this time from the Special Advanced Equitation Class. He placed all his mounts "in the money" in the graduation rides, and won the coveted Charger Trophy.

The regiment received its annual increment from V.M.I. in the assignment of 19 brand new second lieutenants on April 12th.

Major Max Livingston was fortunate in getting an active duty tour at Fort Myer late in May and rode with the 3d Cavalry on its extensive practice march.

The regiment's full quota is anticipating an enjoyable and profitable camp at Fort Belvoir, Va., in August, on a new and interesting schedule of terrain and practical exercises with troops of the 3d Cavalry.

\* \* \*

#### 3d Squadron and Machine Gun Troop, 307th Cavalry—Norfolk, Virginia

CAPT. ROBERT B. BATTE, Cav-Res., *Commanding*

1st Lieut. William A. Trolan has received his certificate of capacity for Captain, Cavalry-Reserve. 1st Lieut. Southgate W. Taylor has completed all requirements for his promotion and should be sporting Captain's insignia in camp this summer.

Capt. R. B. Batte has been busy all spring erecting radio telephone stations for the Chesapeake and Potomac Telephone Co., and we have not seen as much of him as usual.

Our new Chief of Staff, Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Cavalry, paid us a hurried visit last month en route to Richmond. We appreciate his visit and hope next time he can make a longer stay. Seven new graduates of V.M.I. living in this vicinity have been assigned to the 307th Cavalry, and will be affiliated with this unit. They are Second Lieutenants James R. Worsham, Jr., Luther B.



Way, Jr., and William S. Covington, of Norfolk; Josiah P. Gayle, Jr., and Henry S. Read, of Newport News; Cecil L. Sinclair of Hampton, and Alfred C. Darden, Jr., of Fort Monroe. We extend to them a hearty welcome and trust they will take an active part in all squadron training activities.

### 308th Cavalry—Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

COLONEL GEORGE H. CHERRINGTON, Cavalry-Reserve,  
*Commanding*

THE TRAINING YEAR which has just closed is considered very satisfactory. Although increased business activity has placed heavier burdens on most of the officers of the regiment, the number of subcourses completed and the number of officers completing them were practically as many as in the previous year. Attendance at conferences has actually been greater among the officers of the regiment, although attendance at drills and other outdoor activities was somewhat less. Some of the decrease was due, no doubt, to the extremely wet spring during which many drills were rained out.

Since the last letter, the water system has been installed at the Training Center and there is at last a large supply of pure water for man and beast. Another horse has been obtained, making the total twelve.

Most of the officers who are to attend camp have been quite busy in their refresher work. Those who are to command C.M.T.C. troops have been holding frequent conferences of their troop officers to cover the subjects scheduled for the camp. The loose ends are being caught up and made fast so that the instruction given to the students will be the best possible.

### 862d Field Artillery (Horse)—Baltimore, Maryland

COLONEL ROGER S. B. HARTZ, Field Artillery-Reserve,  
*Commanding*

THE EQUITATION class for mounted officers of the Baltimore District which has been held at Fort Hoyle, Maryland, had its last meeting on June 13, 1937, and eighty per cent of the officers present were from the 306th Cavalry and the 862d Field Artillery (Horse). The progress shown by the inexperienced riders was very satisfactory, and it is believed that all who attended are looking

forward with pleasure to a renewal in the fall of these classes.

### R.O.T.C. Cavalry Unit (Regiment) at New Mexico Military Institute

THE POLO TEAM consisting of Cadets Huling Means, Jr., at Number 1; Jack Shirley, at Number 2; Roy Thompson (Captain), at Number 3; and Bob Rogers, back, with John Bannister and C. C. Means as substitutes left on Sunday, May 23, 1937, and returned Tuesday, June 1, 1937. They played nine (9) games winning seven (7) and losing two (2) bringing the season's record to twenty-seven (27) wins against only three (3) defeats. This team coached by Captain A. H. Norton, Cavalry, Retired, is without doubt one of the best in the United States. They will matriculate at the University of Arizona this fall.

Victories on the trip were scored against Oak Brook Club (Chicago), Des Moines Freebooters (two games), Worthington (Minn.) Polo Club, Omaha Polo Club, 2d Cavalry, Fort Riley Kansas, and the Kansas City Country Club (one game). Losses were to Cornell University and one game to Kansas City Country Club (extra chukker).

The team had previously won the Southwest Championship at Fort Bliss, Texas, and defeated the strong University of Arizona quartet who in turn had won the Pacific Intercollegiate Championship.

Cadet Major Henry W. Wadkins, Houston, Texas, was assigned to active duty for one year as a Second Lieutenant under the Thomason Act, reporting to the 8th Cavalry at Fort Bliss, Texas, on July 5, 1937.

Colonel E. A. Keys, Cavalry, Civilian Components Officer, Headquarters, Eighth Corps Area, and a former P.M.S.&T., presented commissions and certificates to fifteen (15) graduates on June 1st. Fifteen other graduates received their commissions and certificates at the close of the R.O.T.C. Camp at Fort Bliss, Texas, on July 14, 1937.

The new stables, conforming to the architectural design of other school buildings will be ready for occupancy September 1, 1937. This modern addition to our facilities, together with other recent construction adds materially to the convenience of training the Cavalry Regiment.

The United States Cavalry Association,  
1624 H Street, N.W.,  
Washington, D. C.

Gentlemen:

Please send me ..... copies of CAVALRY COMBAT.

I (am) (am not) a member of The United States Cavalry Association.

(Strike out one)

(I enclose check for \$..... in full payment.)

(Please bill me when books are mailed.)

(Strike out one)

(Date)

(Place)

(Signature)

(Rank and Organization)

USE

ese

7

ng

2;

bb

as

ed

ies

he

ly

-I.

he

he

ok

),

b,

n-

ty

k-

n-

ng

he

as,

u-

th

ts

er

to

u-

ne

ly

gn

cy

li-

a-

ri-